# Contents

1 LICENSE AND TERMS OF USE - AXISTV ................................................................. 7

2 AXISTV HARDWARE WARRANTY AND SOFTWARE SUPPORT ................................ 11
2.1 Obtaining Warranty Service ........................................................................... 14
2.2 Exclusions and Limitations ........................................................................... 14
2.3 Obtaining Software Support .......................................................................... 14

3 DEPLOYMENT OVERVIEW .................................................................................. 16
3.1 About this Manual ......................................................................................... 16
3.2 Before you Begin ........................................................................................... 16
3.3 Customer Service ......................................................................................... 16
3.4 About AXISTV ............................................................................................... 16
3.5 AXISTV Content Manager/Servers and Channel Players ............................. 16
3.6 About Visix, Inc. ........................................................................................... 17

4 IMPORTANT NOTES ........................................................................................ 18
4.1 Deployment Planning ..................................................................................... 18
4.2 Setup AXISTV in a Controlled Environment First! ....................................... 18
4.3 Choosing a Display Device ........................................................................... 18
4.4 Image Retention ........................................................................................... 18
4.5 Firewall Protection ....................................................................................... 19
4.6 Network Settings ........................................................................................ 19
4.7 Software Only Installation .......................................................................... 19
4.8 InstallShield Notes ....................................................................................... 19
4.9 Installer Prerequisites ................................................................................... 19

5 DEPLOYMENT PLANNING ............................................................................... 20
5.1 Overview ........................................................................................................ 20
5.1.1 AXISTV Topology ................................................................................... 20
5.1.2 Sample Network Diagram ...................................................................... 20
5.1.3 Infrastructure Components ..................................................................... 21
5.2 Network Security Policies ........................................................................... 21
5.3 Network Considerations for AXISTV ......................................................... 22
5.4 Project Plans ................................................................................................ 23
5.4.1 Project Plans .......................................................................................... 23
5.5 New AXISTV Implementations ................................................................. 31
5.5.1 Setup of AXISTV .................................................................................. 31
5.6 Channel Player ............................................................................................. 36

6 APPLYING AXISTV SOFTWARE UPDATES ..................................................... 41
6.1 Important Information – Read and understand before proceeding! .......... 41
6.1.1 Hardware Evaluation ............................................................................. 41
6.2 Updating from AXISTV 6.0.1 or Higher .................................................... 42
6.2.1 Content Manager/Server ...................................................................... 42

7 CHANNEL PLAYER OPTIONS ......................................................................... 44
7.1 Accessing the Channel Player Console ...................................................... 44
7.2 Channel Player Console ................................................................................ 44
7.3 Accessing the Windows® Layer ................................................................... 45
7.4 Video Window ............................................................................................... 46
7.5 Audio Options ............................................................................................... 46
7.6 Channel Player Name & IP Address (Communications) ............................ 46
7.7 Time, Date and Time Zone .......................................................................... 47
7.8 Display Resolution ........................................................................................ 47
18 CONFIGURE .................................................................................................................................................. 170
18.1.1 Mass Alert Notification .......................................................................................................................... 170
18.1.2 News Adapter ......................................................................................................................................... 172
18.1.3 Stock Adapter .......................................................................................................................................... 174
18.1.4 Event Schedule ...................................................................................................................................... 174
18.1.5 Weather Adapter .................................................................................................................................. 178
18.1.6 Screen Saver Plug-in .............................................................................................................................. 180
18.1.7 Security .................................................................................................................................................. 180
18.1.8 Content Settings .................................................................................................................................... 182
18.1.9 Channel Players ..................................................................................................................................... 185
18.1.10 Layouts ................................................................................................................................................ 186
18.1.11 Hardware – v.7.0.9 and higher ............................................................................................................. 188
18.1.12 Desktop Messenger ............................................................................................................................ 196
18.1.13 RSS Publishing ................................................................................................................................... 196
18.1.14 Text Messenger ................................................................................................................................... 197
18.2 SYSTEM TOOLS ....................................................................................................................................... 197
18.2.1 Change Password .................................................................................................................................. 197
18.2.2 Change Mode ......................................................................................................................................... 197
18.2.3 Install AxisTV Desktop (AxisTV v.7.0.18 and higher) ............................................................................ 197
18.2.4 Install Layout Editor (AxisTV v.7.0.9 – AxisTV v.7.0.17) ....................................................................... 198
18.2.5 Install Media Importer(AxisTV v.7.0.9 – AxisTV v.7.0.17) ............................................................... 198
18.2.6 Install AxisTV Free Form Editor (AxisTV v.7.0.9 – AxisTV v.7.0.17) .................................................... 199
18.2.7 Install AxisTV Desktop Messenger ....................................................................................................... 199
18.2.8 Install Screen Saver ............................................................................................................................... 199
18.2.9 Active Alarms ....................................................................................................................................... 199
18.2.10 Status Reports ...................................................................................................................................... 200
18.2.11 Error Logs .......................................................................................................................................... 200

19 LOGOUT ...................................................................................................................................................... 201
19.1 AXIS TV SECURITY ................................................................................................................................. 201
19.1.1 Options ................................................................................................................................................ 201
19.1.2 AxisTV Internal Security ....................................................................................................................... 201
19.1.3 Active Directory .................................................................................................................................. 206
19.2 BACKUP AND RESTORE PROCEDURES ............................................................................................. 208
19.2.1 Frequency ............................................................................................................................................ 209
19.2.2 Automation .......................................................................................................................................... 209
19.2.3 Procedure for MSDE ............................................................................................................................ 209
19.2.4 Procedure for SQL Express 2005 ........................................................................................................ 210
19.3 LICENSING ............................................................................................................................................... 210
19.3.1 Description ........................................................................................................................................... 210
19.3.2 How to request a License Key ............................................................................................................... 210
19.3.3 How to activate a new License Key ...................................................................................................... 211

20 NETWORK ADMINISTRATION .................................................................................................................. 212
20.1 SERVER IDENTIFICATION ..................................................................................................................... 212
20.1.1 AxisTV Windows® Accounts ................................................................................................................ 212
20.1.2 Network Ports ...................................................................................................................................... 213
20.1.3 Workgroup or Domain .......................................................................................................................... 213
20.2 NETWORK SECURITY CONSIDERATIONS ............................................................................................ 214
20.2.1 Windows® Updates .............................................................................................................................. 214
20.2.2 Security Policy .................................................................................................................................... 214
21 STATUS, ERRORS & TROUBLESHOOTING AXISTV ............................ 215
21.1 GENERAL TROUBLESHOOTING ..................................................... 215
21.2 CONTENT MANAGER/SERVER TROUBLESHOOTING ................. 215
21.3 CHANNEL PLAYER TROUBLESHOOTING .................................... 216
21.4 STATUS AND ERROR REPORTING BEHAVIOR ............................ 216
21.4.1 Description ............................................................................. 216
21.4.2 Status entry generation .......................................................... 217
21.4.3 Error entry generation ............................................................ 217
21.4.4 Viewing ............................................................................... 217
21.4.5 Capturing ............................................................................ 218
21.4.6 Forwarding .......................................................................... 218
21.5 SPECIFIC ERRORS .................................................................... 218
21.5.1 An Internal Error has occurred .............................................. 218
21.5.2 Channel Player is not updating ............................................. 219
21.5.3 Channel Player behaves erratically ...................................... 219
21.5.4 Content Manager/Server responds slowly ............................ 219
21.6 BUILDING A CONTENT MANAGER/SERVER ............................ 220
21.6.1 Build and Clone OS ............................................................... 220
21.6.2 Windows® XP Pro ................................................................. 220
21.6.3 Windows® Server 2003 ......................................................... 222
21.6.4 Install and Configure AxisTV ............................................... 223
21.6.5 Configure Server from Clone .............................................. 223
21.7 INSTALLING THE CONTENT MANAGER/SERVER SOFTWARE 224
21.7.1 AxisTV Content Services ....................................................... 224
GENERAL OVERVIEW OF THE MICROSOFT CHANGES ......................... 225
21.8 BUILD A CHANNEL PLAYER ...................................................... 227
21.8.1 Build and Clone OS ............................................................... 227
21.8.2 Windows® XP Pro ................................................................. 227
21.8.3 Install and Configure AxisTV ............................................... 229
21.8.4 Start Here if Building Server from a Clone ......................... 229
21.9 INSTALL AXISTV CHANNEL PLAYER SOFTWARE ................... 230
21.9.1 AxisTV Channel Player ........................................................ 230
21.10 AXISTV DEFAULT PASSWORDS ............................................... 230
21.11 VIDEO WINDOW OPTION ....................................................... 231
21.11.1 Tuner Card Option .............................................................. 231
21.11.2 Channel Player Video Options .......................................... 231
21.11.3 VGA Only ................................................................. 231
21.11.4 Composite or S-Video Only .............................................. 231
21.11.5 Extended Widescreen Option .......................................... 231
22 VISIX SUPPORT CONTACTS ....................................................... 232
1 License and Terms of Use - AxisTV

NOTICE TO USER: PLEASE READ THIS CONTRACT CAREFULLY. BY USING ALL OR ANY PORTION OF THE VISIX READER SOFTWARE ("SOFTWARE") YOU ACCEPT ALL THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS AGREEMENT, INCLUDING, IN PARTICULAR THE LIMITATIONS ON: USE CONTAINED IN SECTION 2; TRANSFERABILITY IN SECTION 4; WARRANTY IN SECTION 6; AND LIABILITY IN SECTION 7. YOU AGREE THAT THIS AGREEMENT IS ENFORCEABLE LIKE ANY WRITTEN NEGOTIATED AGREEMENT SIGNED BY YOU. THIS AGREEMENT IS ENFORCEABLE AGAINST YOU AND ANY LEGAL ENTITY THAT OBTAINED THE SOFTWARE AND ON WhOSE BEHALF IT IS USED. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE, DO NOT USE THIS SOFTWARE. IF YOU ACQUIRED THE SOFTWARE ON TANGIBLE MEDIA (e.g., CD) WITHOUT AN OPPORTUNITY TO REVIEW THIS LICENSE AND YOU DO NOT ACCEPT THIS AGREEMENT, YOU MAY OBTAIN A REFUND OF ANY AMOUNT YOU ORIGINALLY PAID IF YOU: (A) DO NOT USE THE SOFTWARE AND (B) RETURN IT, WITH PROOF OF PAYMENT, TO THE LOCATION FROM WHICH IT WAS OBTAINED WITHIN THIRTY (30) DAYS OF THE PURCHASE DATE.

Visix and its suppliers own all intellectual property in the Software. Visix permits you to Use the Software only in accordance with the terms of this Agreement. Use of some third-party materials included in the Software may be subject to other terms and conditions typically found in a separate license agreement or "ReadMe" file located near such materials.

1. Definitions. "Software" means (a) all of the contents of the files, disk(s), CD-ROM(s), or other media with which this Agreement is provided, including but not limited to (i) Visix or third-party computer information or software; (ii) related explanatory written materials or files ("Documentation"); and (iii) fonts; and (b) upgrades, modified versions, updates, additions, and copies of the Software, if any, licensed to you by Visix (collectively, "Updates"). "Use" or "Using" means to access, install, download, copy, or otherwise benefit from using the functionality of the Software in accordance with the Documentation. "Permitted Number" means one (1) unless otherwise indicated under a valid license (e.g., volume license) granted by Visix. "Computer" means an electronic device that accepts information in digital or similar form and manipulates it for a specific result based on a sequence of instructions. "Visix" means Visix Incorporated, a Georgia corporation, 230 Scientific Drive, Suite 10, Norcross, GA 30092.

2. Software License. As long as you comply with the terms of this Software License Agreement (this "Agreement"), Visix grants to you a non-exclusive license to Use the Software for the purposes described in the Documentation.

2.1 General Use. You may install and Use a copy of the Software on your compatible computer, up to the Permitted Number of computers.

2.2 Server Use and Distribution.

2.2.1 Subject to the terms of this Agreement, you may install one copy of the Software on a computer file server within your internal network for the sole and exclusive purpose of (a) pushing firmware updates to licensed Channel Players using Windows® Terminal Services, no other server or network use of the Software is permitted, including but not limited to use of the Software (i) either directly or through commands, data, or instructions from or to another computer or (ii) for internal network, Internet, or Web hosting services.

2.3 Backup Copy. You may make one backup copy of the Software, provided your backup copy is not installed or used on any computer. You may not transfer the rights to a backup copy unless you transfer all rights in the Software as provided under Section 4 below (4. Restrictions).

2.4 Portable or Home Computer Use. This Software is designed for specific multi-media and visual messaging applications. Users may not make a second copy of the Software for his or her exclusive use on either a portable Computer or a Computer located at his or her home.

2.5 No Modification. You may not alter or modify the Software or create a new installer for the Software. The Software is licensed and distributed by Visix for viewing, distributing, and sharing media files. You are not authorized to integrate or use the Software with any other software, plug-in, or enhancement that uses or relies upon the Software when converting or transforming AxisTV files into other file formats (e.g., an AxisTV file into a TIFF or JPG file).
You are not authorized to integrate or use the Software with any (a) plug-in software not developed in accordance with the Visix Integration Key License Agreement or (b) other software or enhancement to programmatically interface with the Software for the purpose of (i) saving data locally (on the same Computer), except when allowed through the use of Document Feature(s) that have been activated using enabling technology from Visix, (ii) creating a file that contains data (e.g., an XML or comments file).

2.6 Third-Party Web site Access. The Software allows you to access third-party Web sites ("Third-Party Sites"). Your access to and use of any Third-Party Sites, including any goods, services, or information made available from such sites, is governed by the terms and conditions found at each Third-Party Site, if any. Third-Party Sites are not owned or operated by Visix. YOUR USE OF THIRD-PARTY SITES IS AT YOUR OWN RISK. VISIX MAKES NO WARRANTIES, CONDITIONS, INDEMNITIES, REPRESENTATIONS, OR TERMS, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WHETHER BY STATUTE, COMMON LAW, CUSTOM, USAGE, OR OTHERWISE AS TO ANY OTHER MATTERS, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS, TITLE, INTEGRATION, ACCURACY, SECURITY, AVAILABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, MERCHANTABILITY, OR FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE WITH RESPECT TO THE THIRD-PARTY SITES.

3. Intellectual Property Ownership, Copyright Protection. The Software and any authorized copies that you make are the intellectual property of and are owned by Visix Incorporated and its suppliers. The structure, organization, and code of the Software are the valuable trade secrets and confidential information of Visix Incorporated and its suppliers. The Software is protected by law, including without limitation the copyright laws of the United States and other countries, and by international treaty provisions. Except as expressly stated herein, this Agreement does not grant you any intellectual property rights in the Software and all rights not expressly granted are reserved by Visix and its suppliers.

4. Restrictions.

4.1 Notices. You shall not copy the Software except as set forth in Section 2. Any copy of the Software that you make must contain the same copyright and other proprietary notices that appear on or in the Software.

4.2 No Modifications. You shall not modify, adapt, or translate the Software. You shall not reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, or otherwise attempt to discover the source code of the Software except to the extent you may be expressly permitted to decompile under applicable law, it is essential to do so in order to achieve operability of the Software with another software program, and you have first requested Visix to provide the information necessary to achieve such operability and Visix has not made such information available. Visix has the right to impose reasonable conditions and to request a reasonable fee before providing such information. Any such information supplied by Visix and any information obtained by you by such permitted decompilation may only be used by you for the purpose described herein and may not be disclosed to any third party or used to create any software which is substantially similar to the expression of the Software. Requests for information should be directed to the Visix Customer Support Department.

4.3 Transfer. You may not rent, lease, sublicense, assign, or transfer your rights in the Software, or authorize all or any portion of the Software to be copied onto another user's computer except as may be expressly permitted herein. You may, however, transfer all your rights to Use the Software to another person or legal entity provided that: (a) you also transfer (i) this Agreement, and (ii) the Software and all other software or hardware bundled or preinstalled with the Software, including all copies, Updates, and prior versions, to such person or entity; (b) you retain no copies, including backups and copies stored on a computer; and (c) the receiving party accepts the terms and conditions of this Agreement and any other terms and conditions upon which you legally purchased a license to the Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, you may not transfer education, prerelease, or not for resale copies of the Software.

5. Updates. If the Software is an Update to a previous version of the Software, you must possess a valid license to such previous version in order to Use such Update. All Updates are provided to you on a license exchange basis. You agree that by using an Update you voluntarily terminate your right to use any previous version of the Software. As an exception, you may continue to Use previous versions of the Software on your Computer after you Use the Update but only to assist you in the transition to the Update, provided that: (a) the Update and the previous versions are installed on the same computer; (b) the previous versions or copies thereof are not transferred to another party or Computer unless all copies of the Update are also transferred to such party or Computer; and (c) you acknowledge that any obligation Visix may have to support the previous versions of the Software may be ended upon availability of the Update.
6. NO WARRANTY. The Software is being delivered to you “AS IS” and Visix makes no warranty as to its use or performance. VISIX AND ITS SUPPLIERS DO NOT AND CANNOT WARRANT THE PERFORMANCE OR RESULTS YOU MAY OBTAIN BY USING THE SOFTWARE. EXCEPT FOR ANY WARRANTY, CONDITION, REPRESENTATION, OR TERM TO THE EXTENT TO WHICH THE SAME CANNOT OR MAY NOT BE EXCLUDED OR LIMITED BY LAW APPLICABLE TO YOU IN YOUR JURISDICTION, VISIX AND ITS SUPPLIERS MAKE NO WARRANTIES, CONDITIONS, REPRESENTATIONS, OR TERMS (EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WHETHER BY STATUTE, COMMON LAW, CUSTOM, USAGE OR OTHERWISE) AS TO ANY MATTER INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS, MERCHANTABILITY, INTEGRATION, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OR FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE. The provisions of Section 6 and Section 7 shall survive the termination of this Agreement, howsoever caused, but this shall not imply or create any continued right to Use the Software after termination of this Agreement.

7. LIMITATION OF LIABILITY. IN NO EVENT WILL VISIX OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ANY DAMAGES, CLAIMS, OR COSTS WHATSOEVER OR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, CLAIMS, OR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST SAVINGS, EVEN IF AN VISIX REPRESENTATIVE HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH LOSS, DAMAGES, CLAIMS, OR COSTS OR FOR ANY CLAIM BY ANY THIRD PARTY. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS APPLY TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW IN YOUR JURISDICTION. VISIX’S AGGREGATE LIABILITY AND THAT OF ITS SUPPLIERS UNDER OR IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT PAID FOR THE SOFTWARE, IF ANY. Nothing contained in this Agreement limits Visix's liability to you in the event of death or personal injury resulting from Visix's negligence or for the tort of deceit (fraud). Visix is acting on behalf of its suppliers for the purpose of disclaiming, excluding, and/or limiting obligations, warranties, and liability as provided in this Agreement, but in no other respects and for no other purpose. For further information, please see the jurisdiction specific information at the end of this Agreement, if any, or contact Visix's Customer Support Department.

8. Export Rules. You agree that the Software will not be shipped, transferred, or exported into any country or used in any manner prohibited by the United States Export Administration Act or any other export laws, restrictions, or regulations (collectively the “Export Laws”). In addition, if the Software is identified as export controlled items under the Export Laws, you represent and warrant that you are not a citizen, or otherwise located within, an embargoed nation (including without limitation Iran, Iraq, Syria, Sudan, Cuba, North Korea, and Serbia) and that you are not otherwise prohibited under the Export Laws from receiving the Software. All rights to Use the Software are granted on condition that such rights are forfeited if you fail to comply with the terms of this Agreement.

9. Governing Law. This Agreement will be governed by and construed in accordance with the substantive laws in force: (a) in the State of Georgia, if a license to the Software is obtained when you are in the United States, Canada, or Mexico, (b) respective courts of Gwinnett County, Georgia when Georgia law applies. This Agreement will not be governed by the conflict of law provisions of any jurisdiction or the United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, the application of which is expressly excluded.

10. General Provisions. If any part of this Agreement is found void and unenforceable, it will not affect the validity of the balance of this Agreement, which shall remain valid and enforceable according to its terms. This Agreement shall not prejudice the statutory rights of any party dealing as a consumer. This Agreement may only be modified by a writing signed by an authorized officer of Visix. Updates may be licensed to you by Visix with additional or different terms. This is the entire agreement between Visix and you relating to the Software, and it supersedes any prior representations, discussions, undertakings, communications, or advertising relating to the Software.

11. Notice to U.S. Government End Users. The Software and Documentation are "Commercial Items," as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. §2.101, consisting of "Commercial Computer Software" and "Commercial Computer Software Documentation," as such terms are used in 48 C.F.R. §12.212 or 48 C.F.R. §227.7202, as applicable. Consistent with 48 C.F.R. §12.212 or 48 C.F.R. §§227.7202-1 through 227.7202-4, as applicable, the Commercial Computer Software and Commercial Computer Software Documentation are being licensed to U.S. Government end users (a) only as Commercial Items and (b) with only those rights as are granted to all other end users pursuant to the terms and conditions herein. Unpublished-rights reserved under the copyright laws of the United States. Visix Incorporated, 230 Scientific Drive, Suite 10, Norcross, Georgia 30092, USA. For U.S. Government End Users, Visix agrees to comply with all applicable equal opportunity laws including, if appropriate, the provisions of Executive Order 11246, as amended, Section 402 of the Vietnam Era Veterans Readjustment Assistance Act of 1974 (38 USC 4212), and Section 503 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, as amended, and the regulations at 41 CFR Parts 60-1 through 60-250, and 60-741. The affirmative action clause and regulations contained in the preceding sentence shall be incorporated by reference in this Agreement.
12. Compliance with Licenses. If you are a business or organization, you agree that upon request from Visix or Visix's authorized representative, you will within thirty (30) days fully document and certify that use of any and all Software at the time of the request is in conformity with your valid licenses from Visix.

13. Specific Exceptions.

13.1 You are required to take all reasonable measures to avoid and reduce damages, in particular to make backup copies of the Software and your computer data subject to the provisions of this Agreement.

13.2 Prerelease Product Additional Terms. If the product you have received with this license is precommercial release or beta Software ("Prerelease Software"), then the following Section applies. To the extent that any provision in this Section is in conflict with any other term or condition in this Agreement, this Section shall supersede such other term(s) and condition(s) with respect to the Prerelease Software, but only to the extent necessary to resolve the conflict. You acknowledge that the Software is a prerelease version, does not represent the final product from Visix, and may contain bugs, errors, and other problems that could cause system or other failures and data loss. Consequently, the Prerelease Software is provided to you "AS-IS," and Visix disclaims any warranty or liability obligations to you of any kind. WHERE LIABILITY CANNOT BE EXCLUDED FOR PRERELEASE SOFTWARE, BUT IT MAY BE LIMITED, VISIX'S LIABILITY AND THAT OF ITS SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE SUM OF FIFTY DOLLARS (US$50) IN TOTAL. You acknowledge that Visix has not promised or guaranteed to you that Prerelease Software will be announced or made available to anyone in the future, Visix has no express or implied obligation to you to announce or introduce the Prerelease Software, and that Visix may not introduce a product similar to or compatible with the Prerelease Software. Accordingly, you acknowledge that any research or development that you perform regarding the Prerelease Software or any product associated with the Prerelease Software is done entirely at your own risk. During the term of this Agreement, if requested by Visix, you will provide feedback to Visix regarding testing and use of the Prerelease Software, including error or bug reports. If you have been provided the Prerelease Software pursuant to a separate written agreement, such as the Visix Systems Incorporated Serial Agreement for Unreleased Products, your use of the Software is also governed by such agreement. You agree that you may not and certify that you will not sublicense, lease, loan, rent, assign, or transfer the Prerelease Software. Upon receipt of a later unreleased version of the Prerelease Software or release by Visix of a publicly released commercial version of the Software, whether as a standalone product or as part of a larger product, you agree to return or destroy all earlier Prerelease Software received from Visix and to abide by the terms of the license agreement for any such later versions of the Prerelease Software. Notwithstanding anything in this Section to the contrary, if you are located outside the United States of America, you agree that you will return or destroy all unreleased versions of the Prerelease Software within thirty (30) days of the completion of your testing of the Software when such date is earlier than the date for Visix's first commercial shipment of the publicly released (commercial) Software.

If you have any questions regarding this Agreement or if you wish to request any information from Visix, use the address and contact information included with this product to contact the Visix office serving your jurisdiction.

Visix is a registered trademark of Visix, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.
2 AxisTV Hardware Warranty and Software Support

Visix, Inc. (formerly Tech Electronics, Inc.) warrants the hardware and software components of AxisTV as described herein. This is a non-transferable, limited warranty that extends only to the original user of the system.

Users should not confuse “Hardware Warranty” with the Software Maintenance and Support Agreement (SMA). For complete hardware warranty and SMA information, users should consult www.visix.com.

Hardware Warranty Plan (Depot Repair)

HEADER

Visix has contracted with its PC configuration providers, Great Lakes Electronic Distributing, Inc. (GLED), to provide you with this two (2) year hardware warranty. This warranty is transferred to you, the user, to support the hardware components of your integrated Visix solution. This warranty also includes a one (1) year “Spare to Go” product loan component detailed in section 3, subset 3. Visix software support is not covered under this “warranty.” Please contact Visix for software support and or clarification of where to direct your questions.

1. ACTIVATION

This Service Plan is activated, and the below terms and conditions apply, on the date of shipment of the Equipment by the Manufacturer (“OEM”). User registration is not required to activate this Service Plan.

2. SERVICE PLAN

This Service Plan applies to DEPOT repair services that are available to you from Great Lakes Electronic Distributing (“GLED”) for the Equipment you purchased. Visix, Inc. (“Visix”) shall facilitate correspondence and provide to the User the services described in this Service Plan for a period of two (2) years from date of activation.

3. COVERAGE

(1) To obtain performance under this Service Plan, an End User should call Visix at their toll-free number 800-572-4935 and report the nature of the problem with the Equipment. Only representatives of Visix or authorized Visix service providers may perform repairs on the Equipment under this Service Plan. (2) During the Service Plan Period, Visix will repair or replace, at the option of Visix, any Equipment having a defect in material or workmanship. All replacement parts shall be provided by the OEM at no cost to End User. Visix will return the Equipment to a like factory shipped condition. Visix will not reload User’s software. Circumstances may; however, require the reloading of the operating system as originally installed by the Manufacturer. Replacement parts are new or like new (tested equivalent to new). Visix may provide replacement parts made by various manufacturers when supplying parts to User. All replacement parts shall also be covered under this Service Plan for the remainder of the Service Plan Period or thirty (30) days (whichever is longer) and OEM warrants that replacement parts will be interchangeable with the parts they are to replace, and will conform to the specifications current when they are shipped. (3) In the event a product must be returned to Visix or designated contractor, Visix will ship a similar spare product (“Spare to Go Program”) to reduce downtime associated with the repair. The spare is defined as a loan of a similar product that must first be secured by a valid credit card. Spares ship via UPS Ground. Expedited delivery requests will be billed against the same valid credit card. The Spare to Go Program is valid only for one (1) year. For a fee, the program can be extended for a second year to match the hardware warranty. (4) Some problems or defects may require Visix to reformat or replace a Hard Disk Drive. Under such circumstances all data on the disk drive may be lost. The User is solely responsible for the security of User’s data. Neither Visix nor the authorized Visix service providers shall be liable for the loss or destruction of data or media resulting from a defect in materials or workmanship covered by this Service Plan or resulting from the services performed hereunder. Visix strongly advises End User to implement and maintain a daily routine to backup data to minimize the loss of data in the event of Equipment failure. Visix service providers are not required to return all replaced and/or unused components including Hard Disk Drives.
Users that intend to keep a failed Hard Disk Drive to attempt data recovery or protect the data must make arrangements to purchase a replacement Hard Disk Drive prior to the service incident. Neither Visix nor the OEM will accept the failed Hard Disk Drive after the service incident has been closed. (5) The End User should include the original OS or recovery CD with the defective product to allow Visix to re-image the drive with a licensed copy of the OS and install the appropriate Visix applications. (6) Visix representatives will initially attempt to diagnose problems over the telephone. Telephone technical services are available on the Visix toll-free service line, 800-572-4935, during normal business hours (8:30 AM to 5 PM EST) Monday through Friday, with the exception of certain published holidays.

4. EXCLUSIONS

This Service Plan does not include: (1) Service or replacement of peripherals including, but not limited to, keyboards, mice, monitors, scanners, speaker sets, external drives, backup media, power protection devices, or Equipment specified by the OEM as special, non-stock, or custom ordered goods. These items may be warranted by the OEM or Manufacturer; (2) Installation or set-up of the Equipment; (3) Service needed as a result of moving the Equipment; (4) Physical and/or cosmetic damage to the exterior surface or housing of the Equipment; (5) Problems resulting from negligence, misuse, abuse, or other physical casualty to the Equipment; improper maintenance; electrical disturbances; acts of nature; or work, attachments, additions, alterations, or modifications by persons other than qualified service providers; (6) Service needed as a result of improper operating environment; (7) Any problem not involving a defect in the Equipment hardware, including, but not limited to software problems and errors, programming problems and errors, software incompatibility problems, software installation problems and errors, and operating system problems and errors; (8) Any problem deemed by Visix, in its sole discretion that cannot be solved by on-site replacement of defective Equipment hardware; or (9) Use of any item with the Equipment if the item is not designated by the OEM for use with the Equipment.

5. RESPONSIBILITIES OF USER

User shall: (1) operate the Equipment in an environment meeting the OEM’s specifications; (2) protect the supply of electricity to the Equipment through the use of appropriate surge protection devices; (3) comply with the OEM’s operating manual; (4) if you are experiencing hardware difficulties and are receiving diagnostic messages, print out or make note of the error message and communicate it to an Visix help desk technician; (5) permit no work on the Equipment except by qualified service providers who are properly trained; (6) have an adult representative present whenever Visix provides support services; (7) perform such diagnostic procedures or programs as requested by an authorized Visix representative; (8) safeguard and deliver to an authorized Visix service provider all replacement parts and/or accessories shipped by the Manufacturer to End User. Either the part(s) to be replaced or the replacement part(s) or item(s) shipped to End User must be returned to the Service Provider at the time of service. End User assumes financial responsibility for all parts and accessories, including, but not limited to, cables, diskettes, manuals and other accessories bundled with component(s), shipped to User until the items or parts replaced are returned to the Service Provider. User may be required to supply a valid credit card number and expiration date (i.e. VISA or Master Card) to secure reimbursement to the OEM in the event of physical or cosmetic damage and/or all defective or unused parts, components and accessories are not returned to the Service Provider at the time of service.

6. TRANSFER OF SERVICE PLAN

This Service Plan may be transferred at any time during the original term hereof. The transferee succeeds to the remaining term of the Service Plan.
7. LIMITATION OF LIABILITY

NEITHER VISIX NOR ITS AUTHORIZED SERVICE PROVIDERS HAVE ANY LIABILITY TO USER(S) FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, PUNITIVE, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOST PROFITS OR LOSS OF BUSINESS OR DOWN TIME, YOUR TIME, THE CLAIMS OF THIRD PARTIES OR INJURY TO PROPERTY, REGARDLESS OF THE NATURE OF THE CLAIM, EVEN IF EXELUS OR ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT EXELUS AND/OR ITS AUTHORIZED SERVICE PROVIDERS ARE NOT RESPONSIBLE FOR LOSS, DESTRUCTION OR DAMAGE TO SOFTWARE AND DATA. YOUR SOLE REMEDY AGAINST EXELUS OR ITS AUTHORIZED SERVICE PROVIDERS IS LIMITED TO THE COST OF REPLACING THE DEFECTIVE EQUIPMENT AND/OR TO SEEK RECOVERY OF THE AMOUNTS YOU HAVE PAID FOR THIS SERVICE PLAN. LAWS VARY FROM STATE TO STATE SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS MAY NOT APPLY.

8. PARTS AVAILABILITY

Because of the rapid development of technology in the computer industry, or for other reasons, a particular part may not be available from the OEM. In such an event, Visix will make reasonable efforts to locate a compatible replacement part(s) from other sources. If Visix cannot locate a compatible replacement part(s), then, if possible, Visix will offer to upgrade User’s system to the least expensive configuration that can be serviced. If User elects to accept the offer to upgrade, then User shall repay Visix for the cost of the upgrade. In the event User chooses not to accept the upgrade Visix shall not be responsible to make repairs under this Service Plan.

9. MISCELLANEOUS

This Service Plan shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of Georgia. If any provision of this Service Plan is void or unenforceable, the parties agree to delete it and agree that the remainder of this Service Plan will continue to be in effect. Visix may assign this Agreement to another party. This Service Plan contains the entire understanding of the parties and supersedes all previous verbal and written agreements with regard to the subject hereof. No term or condition of any purchase order or other writing issued by User inconsistent with this Service Plan will be binding upon Visix.

*Effective Date: 01/02/07. Revised from 2005-2006 policies. We reserve the right to change this policy at any time.

Depot Warranty Summary Grid (Please read the details of this warranty).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Included</th>
<th>Available</th>
<th>Excluded</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 Year Depot Repair</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Year “Spare to Go”</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disk Drive Imaging*</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ground Shipment</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional 1 Year “Spare to Go”</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data Backup and Restoration</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expedited Shipping</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Onsite Service</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Software Support</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Client must provide an original copy of the OS or recovery CD for either Visix or one of its contractors to legally re-image a hard disk drive. There are no exceptions to this policy.
### 2.1 Obtaining Warranty Service

Users must contact Visix Technical Support to obtain warranty service. The user must obtain a Visix Return Materials Authorization prior to shipping equipment to Visix or its designated repair facility. The user is responsible for proper packaging of equipment returned. Visix is not responsible for damage incurred during shipment to Visix or its designated repair facility. All return shipments must be freight prepaid.

Visix will make all reasonable efforts to repair and ship returned equipment within five business days of receipt. Visix will ship repaired equipment and replacement components to the user freight prepaid by normal ground transportation.

### 2.2 Exclusions and Limitations

Hardware additions, software not preinstalled by Visix, upgrades, modifications, or configuration changes not done by Visix are not covered by this warranty and any failures resulting thereof are excluded from warranty coverage.

After the initial warranty period, this warranty does not provide for on-site repair service. Users will not be reimbursed for labor or other costs incurred in troubleshooting or repairing or for costs for shipping equipment to Visix or its authorized repair facility.

This warranty excludes damage or failure that, in the sole opinion of Visix, was caused by accident, misuse, improper handling, misapplication, attempted troubleshooting or repair by other than Visix-authorized personnel, lack of proper maintenance, or an act of God.

VISIX, INC. IS NOT LIABLE FOR AND SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIMS ANY INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF A BREACH OF THIS WARRANTY OR FOR ANY SOFTWARE OR DATA THAT MAY BE LOST DUE TO HARDWARE FAILURE.

EXCEPT FOR THE WARRANTIES SET FORTH HEREIN, VISIX, INC. DISCLAIMS ALL OTHER WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES THAT MAY BE IMPLIED BY APPLICABLE LAW ARE LIMITED TO THE DURATION OF THIS LIMITED WARRANTY.

This warranty gives you specific legal rights that may vary from state to state.

### 2.3 Obtaining Software Support

Visix **DOES NOT** provide on-demand telephone support. The only exception to this policy applies to Service Level Agreement (SLA) clients. The MOST effective way to initiate support is via the Web at [www.visix.com](http://www.visix.com).

Every new AxisTV system includes 30 days of priority tech support and free upgrades for 90 days - all at no additional cost. Please do not confuse Priority Support with On-demand Support. Since our software deployments are resident on local/wide area networks, our troubleshooting typically extends beyond our application. AxisTV deployments should be scheduled and confirmed 48 hours in advance.

There are multiple service level options to support virtually every budget.

- **Service Level Agreement (SLA)** – The highest priority service. Even though SMA subscribers (noted below) receive telephone support within two hours of the creation of a trouble ticket. A number of clients will prefer nearly instantaneous responses to their support requests. Near real-time support is provided with a service level agreement (SLA). The basic service provides users with access to a technical support queue that escalates calls in a matter of minutes. Our SLA offers these services from 8:30 am – 5:00 pm, Monday through Friday, with the exception of published holidays. The SLA can be customized to offer additional services, times, remote monitoring and more with incremental rate increases based on individual service requirements.
• **Software Maintenance and Support Agreement (SMA)** - The Visix Software Maintenance and Support Agreement offers the most economical way to receive the latest versions of Visix software technology. SMA subscribers receive regular upgrades on CD-ROM or download at no charge. SMAs are available for both U.S. and International customers.

When you purchase a Software Maintenance and Support Agreement (SMA), you receive the following benefits:

1. Access to tips and tricks Webinars
2. Automatic upgrades to major and minor releases for your licensed version of AxisTV. Visix is committed to one major upgrade release, three enhancement and/or feature releases and any number of fixes every 12 months
3. Remote problem analysis and assistance during normal business hours
4. Priority Service: Faster response to tickets created via the web, email or voicemail
5. Normal business hours – 8:30 AM – 5:00 PM EST/EDT, Monday through Friday except published holidays
6. Discounts on training and consulting services
7. Selected participation in pre-release software evaluations
8. Support for routine, short duration installation, upgrade and usage questions
9. Benefit from substantial savings compared to incremental upgrade costs
10. Reduce cost and time - no orders to place, no additional payments to make

• **Per Incident (Fee Based) Support** (American Express, Master Card or Visa required)
3 Deployment Overview

3.1 About This Manual

This Comprehensive Guide is intended to convey all of the information necessary to get your AxisTV system installed and operating. It refers to other sources of information when necessary for detailed information on advanced and optional features.

The instructions contained in this document refer specifically to AxisTV Version 7.0.x.x. While most information is applicable to all versions of AxisTV software, some details do vary.

3.2 Before you Begin

Before you begin the AxisTV deployment it is important that you read the Chapters titled “Important Notes” and “Deployment Planning”. These chapters contain relevant information that you will need to review before proceeding to your installation or upgrade. The chapter titled “What do I need to know?” contains a matrix to help you determine which parts of the manual will be valuable for your particular needs.

3.3 Customer Service

We strive to make our products as easy to use as possible, but if you find you have a question unanswerable by our manual or online support at www.visix.com, please call customer service at (800) 572-4935 or (770) 446-1416 or email us at support@visix.com. However, please refer to the information provided before calling, the answer to your question is usually there. Near on-demand telephone support is available only to Service Level Agreement (SLA) clients.

3.4 About AxisTV

AxisTV is a sophisticated network-based bulletin display system for use with televisions, monitors, plasma displays, and other display devices. Through a common Web browser, anyone connected to your local area network (LAN) can create, upload, manage and deliver creative and powerful messages.

AxisTV goes beyond the usability of a traditional character generator or bulletin display system by opening access to virtually an unlimited number of people via your LAN or even through the Internet. Users gain access to a secure AxisTV server with a valid ID and password, and all display submittals are approved by a system administrator before being displayed.

This comprehensive manual will guide you on setting up the AxisTV product(s) you have purchased. You will find that all the AxisTV server hardware and software is already installed—you just need to configure the server for your organization and connect it to your computer and video networks.

From time to time, we will contact you about available upgrades to your system. These upgrades will be available from your local AxisTV dealer or online at www.visix.com.

3.5 AxisTV Content Manager/Servers and Channel Players

The AxisTV System includes a Content Manager/Server and one or more Channel Players. The Content Manager/Server hosts the AxisTV application software, system database, and the Web browser based user interface. The Content Manager/Server does not provide bulletin display outputs—this is the role of the Channel Players.

Channel Players are the units that create the video and audio signals for distribution and delivery to displays supported by a signal distribution infrastructure. They run the AxisTV Display Engine software (custom embedded version of Windows® XP), and provide video and audio connections on the back of the player (i.e., DVI, S-Video, Composite video, and VGA). Support for additional locations and/or channels of bulletin display are accomplished by adding Channel Players. The AxisTV Standard application can support up to 2 Channel Players, and the Professional application can support up to 10 Channel Players off the shelf and can be scaled to support up to 50 players with optional licensing. Enterprise application can support 50 Channel Players off the shelf and up to 4000 with optional licensing.
The Content Manager/Servers are standard 19-inch 2 rack unit (RU) servers. The Channel Players are shipped in one of four physical form factors – 2RU, Small Form Factor (SFF), Mini Form Factor (MFF) and MeetingMinder™ (MM). For specific details on sizes and weights, please consult www.visix.com.

A portion of this manual covers installing and setting up Content Manager/Servers and the other portions of this manual will guide you on installing Channel Players. The Content Manager/Server runs the Windows® XP Professional operating system. The Content Manager/Server can optionally run the Windows® 2003 Server Standard Edition operating system. All Channel Players run a custom embedded version of the Windows® XP Professional operating system. Users cannot access the standard Windows® interface from this application.

3.6 About Visix, Inc.

Visix, Inc. designs, develops and supports a suite of software applications that allow users to create, import and manage their visual communications from anywhere and to deliver those messages to virtually any endpoint.

The company offers digital signage software, room and event scheduling solutions, and applications for targeted messaging to desktops and portable devices. Each of the products works independently or can be integrated into scalable deployments from a single display to large networks. This comprehensive approach to on-time communications – from concept to delivery – provides systems including software, hardware and distribution accessories, as well as multi-tier service and support options to manage and maintain dynamic visual communications.

Contact Visix at 800.572.4935 or salesteam@visix.com. Parties interested in additional information about Visix, AxisTV, MeetingMinder™, and targeted visual communications products should visit the Visix website at www.visix.com.
4 Important notes

It is important to read this section since most deployment issues can be avoided if the following items are considered.

- Deployment Planning
- Setting up AxisTV in a controlled environment first
- Choosing a display device
- Image Retention
- Firewall Protection
- Network Settings
- Software Only Installation
- InstallShield Notes
- Installer Prerequisites

4.1 Deployment Planning

As with any system, deployment planning is one of the most important pieces. We have included all necessary items in the "Deployment Planning" section to ensure all things are considered before proceeding.

4.2 Setup AxisTV in a controlled environment first!

AxisTV has been designed to work "out of the box", however because all networks vary, it is strongly suggested that AxisTV be setup in a controlled environment and transferred to your network after operation has been validated. This is important for the following reasons:

- Verify that all components of the AxisTV system are working to customer expectations.
- Establishing a baseline of operation in order to determine if an issue is occurring with AxisTV or the client’s network

The typical steps are (these will be detailed further in this document):

- Review of Important Notes
- Completion of the “Deployment Planning” worksheets
- Initial setup and configuration of the system
- Validation of operation
- Client Specific Changes
- Validation of operation with client specific changes
- Deployment of AxisTV
- Validation of Operation

4.3 Choosing a display device

Choosing a display device is one of the most important steps. AxisTV is designed to output a high quality signal; however, the display device must be chosen carefully in order to verify the display device is designed to support the AxisTV signal output options. Please refer to the “Choosing a display device” section for detailed instructions.

4.4 Image Retention

Video displays, particularly plasma displays, are subject to image retention or burn-in. This occurs when the image on all or a part of the display stays constant for an extended period. Different displays are affected differently and technology is improving, so there are no absolute conditions that prevent burn-in. AxisTV gives the user flexibility to create and display a variety of video images. Since Visix does not control the content that is being displayed, Visix is not responsible for image retention on devices connected to the AxisTV System.

To minimize the possibility of image retention in an AxisTV System, Visix recommends the following:

- Never have a single bulletin running alone. Always have multiple bulletins active.
- Use a variety of backgrounds and text colors.
- Avoid company logos or other images in the same position on every bulletin.
- When using manual Show Time settings, keep the times as short as possible.
- Use text crawls sparingly.
- Use built-in orbiting tools if available on the display.
- Occasionally use image inversion and or “white” tools if available on the display.
4.5 Firewall Protection

All computers need protection from intrusion and other malicious or mischievous activities. AxisTV is built on Microsoft® Windows® and uses Microsoft’s® Internet Information Services. Both of these are frequent targets for malicious or mischievous attacks. It is strongly recommended that all AxisTV devices, and especially Content Manager/Servers be protected from the Internet and where applicable from local traffic.

4.6 Network Settings

Your AxisTV system has very specific requirements regarding networking and security settings. Before making any changes to the factory configuration, be sure you have read and understand the sections of this document that refer to the changes you intend to perform. Pay particular attention to changing the name of any device and with making any Windows® security settings changes. Be sure to read the Chapter titled Network Administration.

4.7 Software Only Installation

If you opted for a software only installation of either the Content Manager/Server or Channel Player (Enterprise version of AxisTV contains the Software Only option for Channel Players), you must read the appropriate Appendices in this document that outline how to setup a Content Manager/Server or Channel Player, these chapters are located in the Appendices.

4.8 InstallShield Notes

Release 7.0.x comes with the following InstallShield installers:

- AxisTV Content Services
- AxisTV Channel Player
- AxisTV Desktop Messenger
- AxisTV Screen Saver
- AxisTV FreeForm Editor
- AxisTV Media Importer
- AxisTV Layout Editor (v.7.0.9 and higher)
- AxisTV Desktop (v.7.0.18 and higher)

Five of the installers, AxisTV Desktop Messenger, AxisTV FreeForm Editor, AxisTV Media Importer, AxisTV Layout Editor (v.7.0.9 and higher), and AxisTV Screen Saver are actually bundled into the installer for AxisTV Content Services and are part of the Web User Interface for customers using versions prior to v.7.0.18.

Note: Customers using AxisTV v.7.0.18 and higher:

AxisTV Free Form Editor, AxisTV Media Importer, AxisTV Layout Editor, and a new application, AxisTV Template Editor are bundled into one, downloadable application.

4.9 Installer Prerequisites

The installer will optionally install SQL Server 2005 Express. SQL 2005 Express is superior to MSDE 2000, but is optional for upgrade customers who wish to keep their existing MSDE database or don’t want to go through a backup and restore procedure.

Microsoft® .NET Framework 2.0 is required in order to execute AxisTV 7.0.x.x and is bundled into the installer.

On some Windows® XP installations, the Windows® Installer service itself is automatically updated by the installer. If this happens the PC may require a reboot and will continue the installation after the reboot.
5 Deployment Planning

5.1 Overview

In order to ensure that the AxisTV Implementation is executed as effectively as possible, the client or integrator should complete the following planning items.

- Review the AxisTV Topology
- Creation of a network diagram as it relates to AxisTV
- Validation of infrastructure items

5.1.1 AxisTV Topology

A configured AxisTV solution is designed to integrate into local or wide area network. Data management and transfer are typically handled through 10/100/1000 Ethernet infrastructure. The output of the AxisTV player(s) can be configured to include VGA, DVI, composite or component S-Video and accompanying audio. These signals are typically distributed to any number of digital signs using traditional audio-visual signal distribution products. These products may include VGA distribution amplifiers and category-5 transmitters/receivers.

The signal outputs in the diagram below are being distributed to a network of televisions, LCD/plasma displays, portable devices, web pages and desktops as screen savers and pop-up messengers over the network.

When a client chooses to deliver visual messages to a network of televisions, the audio and video signals are typically distributed via an existing RF distribution system using modulators and dedicated channels. In this case, the bulletins would appear on a particular channel on the televisions.

Note that the specific components necessary to deliver these signals are not represented in the diagram, and the AxisTV package does not include a video distribution system or any of the components needed.

5.1.2 Sample Network Diagram

A network diagram should be created outlining the layout of the network as it pertains to AxisTV.
5.1.3 Infrastructure Components

All components that will be required for the Content Manager/Server as well as each Channel Player should be listed and verified. These could include:

- **Power Drops**
  - Channel Player
  - Content Manager/Server
  - Output Devices
  - Device Control
  - VGA over CAT5 (VGX)
  - Satellite or Video Window Signal device

- **Network Drops**
  - Channel Player
  - Content Manager/Server
  - Device Control

- **Dedicated CAT5 drops**
  - VGA over CAT5 extenders

- **Other Cabling**
  - Audio
  - Video

5.2 Network Security Policies

The AxisTV servers are complex systems, which have been carefully configured to operate correctly and reliably. Many organizations have policies defining acceptable configurations for computers connected to their internal network. The application of security policies to the AxisTV servers without consideration of the effects of those changes could result in the failure of the AxisTV system. Failure of the system due to such changes might require rebuilding the operating system and/or AxisTV. Those repairs would not be covered by your warranty and might require the return of the server to the factory.

Your AxisTV system can be made to satisfy your organization’s security requirements and Visix will assist you when making decisions necessary to meet those requirements.

The following items are required to be present and in good working order for AxisTV 7.0.x.x to function correctly:

- **Windows® XP Professional® with Service Pack 2 or higher.** The Content Manager/Server can be installed on Windows® Server 2003 also.

- **Internet Information Services, including the anonymous “IUSR_[computername]” Windows® XP Professional user account**

- **Microsoft® .NET Framework version 2.0 for the Content Manager/Server and for the Channel Players, including ASP.NET for Internet Information Services**

- **SQL Express 2005 running in MIXED MODE is required for the Content Manager/Server.** Upgrade clients can continue to use MSDE if desired.

- **Windows® XP Professional user account named “axistvuser” with the password set to “TechTech1!”,** which must be a member of the local Administrators group
Caution should be taken when applying security changes. The following areas are of particular concern:

- Internet Information Services must be able to run the ASP.NET worker processes
- Microsoft® .NET Framework configuration settings (under the Windows® installation directory) must be accessible by the framework components, including ASP.NET
- The Windows® user account "axistvuser" must not be denied access to the registry or the HDD
- The Windows® user account for Internet Information Services “IUSR_[computername]” must have write access to the ...\AxisTV\Web\... subdirectories “Backgrounds”, “Bin”, “Previews”, “Public\Images”, and “BinaryStorage”

It is possible that other changes that might be made could cause other unexpected consequences. A thorough understanding of the Windows® XP Professional operating system, SQL Server 2005, Internet Information Services and the .NET Framework is required to properly and safely apply security changes to your AxisTV system.

5.3 Network Considerations for AxisTV

To determine network settings for the AxisTV servers, consider the following:

- The network must be capable of supporting the TCP/IP protocol.
- The AxisTV Content Manager/Server and Channel Player can use DHCP addresses or be assigned static IP addresses.
- The Content Manager/Server will function as an independent server on the network and its network role is to act as a Web server and to host the AxisTV application.
5.4 Project Plans

5.4.1 Project Plans

5.4.1.1 New Implementation Project Plan

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WBS</th>
<th>Task Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Generic Implementation Plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Planning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>Content Manager/Server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.1</td>
<td>Evaluation of Features (Std, Pro, Ent)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.2</td>
<td>Client IT Policies Review</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3</td>
<td>Hardware discussion (Visix vs client)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.4</td>
<td>Operating System Discussion (2003 Extra)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.2</td>
<td>Channel Players (overall)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.2.1</td>
<td>Hardware Determination (Visix vs Client)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.2.2</td>
<td>Corporate Policies evaluation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.2.3</td>
<td>Computer Naming Requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.2.4</td>
<td>Network Requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3</td>
<td>Channel Players (Each)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3.1</td>
<td>Display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3.1.1</td>
<td>Display Location</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3.1.2</td>
<td>Display Mounting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3.1.3</td>
<td>Research Display Details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3.1.4</td>
<td>Device Remote Control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3.1.5</td>
<td>Audio evaluation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3.1.6</td>
<td>Aspect Ratio/Orientation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3.1.7</td>
<td>Determine Display Resolution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3.1.8</td>
<td>Display Connection Details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3.1.9</td>
<td>Cabling Requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3.1.10</td>
<td>Channel Player Determination (existing or individual)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3.2</td>
<td>Channel Player Details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3.2.1</td>
<td>Form Factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3.2.2</td>
<td>Channel Player Location</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3.2.3</td>
<td>Media Playback</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3.2.4</td>
<td>Video Feed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3.2.5</td>
<td>Adobe Flash®</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3.2.6</td>
<td>Distance (Channel Player to Display) evaluation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3.2.7</td>
<td>Options Validation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3.2.8</td>
<td>Cabling Details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3.2.9</td>
<td>Power (UPS Rack)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.4</td>
<td>Delivery Logistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.4.1</td>
<td>Discussion of Channel Player rollout methods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.4.2</td>
<td>Discussion of Content Manager/Server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.5</td>
<td>Implementation Planning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.5.1</td>
<td>Determine Involvement and Responsibilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.5.2</td>
<td>Create Plan according to Channel Player Details</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Page 23 of 232
## New Implementation Project Plan (continued)

### 1.1.6 Training Evaluation

1.1.6.1 Validate Training Method (Train the Trainer, Web) etc

### 1.1.7 Risk Evaluation

### 1.2 Pre Implementation

#### 1.2.1 Conference Room Pilot

1.2.1.1 Environment

1.2.1.1.1 Discussion of CRP vs Production

1.2.1.1.2 Access to DHCP Network

1.2.1.1.3 Network Switch/Hub for Channel Players/Content Manager/Servers

1.2.1.1.4 Displays or Substitute Displays (Warning)

1.2.1.1.5 Power and Cabling

1.2.1.2 Channel Player

1.2.1.2.1 Connect or Setup or Channel Player

1.2.1.2.2 Verify Specification and Options based on Planning

1.2.1.2.3 Initial Setup

1.2.1.2.3.1 Connect Power

1.2.1.2.3.2 Connect Display directly to appropriate output (OB, GC1)

1.2.1.2.3.3 Power on Display and Channel Player

1.2.1.2.3.4 Setup Channel Player Configuration Defaults, Play

1.2.1.2.3.5 Observe Default Playlist

1.2.1.2.4 2nd Phase Setup

1.2.1.2.4.1 Modify Resolution Settings on Player using Player Console

1.2.1.2.4.2 Connect Video Feed and setup defaults using Player Console

1.2.1.2.4.3 Connect Network

1.2.1.2.4.4 Record Name of Player

1.2.1.3 Content Manager/Server

1.2.1.3.1 Connection or Setup of New Content Manager/Server

1.2.1.3.2 Connect Power

1.2.1.3.3 Connect Network

1.2.1.3.4 Connect Display

1.2.1.3.5 Power on Server

1.2.1.3.6 Login as AxisTVUser

1.2.1.3.7 Licensing of Server

1.2.1.3.8 Initialization of Content Manager/Server

1.2.1.3.9 Validation of Licenses using License Manager

1.2.1.3.10 Login to AxisTV as Administrator

1.2.1.3.11 Proceed to the Manage Channel Player Screen

1.2.1.3.12 Add Each Channel Player to Content Manager/Server

1.2.1.3.12.1 Press the Add Button

1.2.1.3.12.2 Enter the DNS Name (AxisTV#####) or IP Address of Player

1.2.1.3.12.3 Enter Friendly Name

1.2.1.3.12.4 Enter Port 6500 as telnet port

1.2.1.3.12.5 Click Finish

1.2.1.3.12.6 If an error occurs, Content Manager/Server cannot see Channel Player

1.2.1.3.12.6.2 Manual Telnet

1.2.1.3.12.7 Verify Resolution Section contains the actual resolution the Channel Player is set to

1.2.1.3.12.8 Modify Content Blocks
### New Implementation Project Plan (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.3.12.9</td>
<td>Validate results show on Channel Player in several minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.3.13</td>
<td>Setup and verify Features</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.3.13.1</td>
<td>Add a Bulletin to AxisTV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.3.13.2</td>
<td>Add a Free Form bulletin (setup)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.3.13.3</td>
<td>Setup Large File upload utility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.3.13.4</td>
<td>Changing Default values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.3.13.4.1</td>
<td>Playlist Names</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.3.13.4.2</td>
<td>Ticker Names</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.3.13.4.3</td>
<td>Additional Modes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.3.13.5</td>
<td>Weather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.3.13.5.1</td>
<td>Configuring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.3.13.5.2</td>
<td>Validate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.3.13.5.3</td>
<td>Adding Bulletins or Crawls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.3.13.6</td>
<td>News</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.3.13.6.1</td>
<td>Configuring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.3.13.6.2</td>
<td>Validate Operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.3.13.6.3</td>
<td>Adding Bulletins or Crawls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.3.13.7</td>
<td>External Graphic Link</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.3.13.7.1</td>
<td>Determine URL of links</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.3.13.7.2</td>
<td>Setup EGL Bulletins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.3.13.7.3</td>
<td>Verify recurring updates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.3.13.8</td>
<td>Event Management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.3.13.8.1</td>
<td>Setup Locations, Status, etc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.3.13.8.2</td>
<td>Configure Adapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.3.13.8.3</td>
<td>Test Adapter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.3.14</td>
<td>Validation of data and operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.4</td>
<td>Specific Changes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.4.1</td>
<td>Content Manager/Server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.4.1.1</td>
<td>Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.4.1.2</td>
<td>Network Settings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.4.1.3</td>
<td>Domain Policies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.4.1.4</td>
<td>Discuss Effects of Other Software</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.4.2</td>
<td>Channel Players</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.4.2.1</td>
<td>Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.4.2.2</td>
<td>Network Settings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.4.2.3</td>
<td>Domain Policies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.4.2.4</td>
<td>Discuss Effects of Other Software</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>Rollout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.1</td>
<td>Content Manager/Server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.1.1</td>
<td>Move to Production Environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.2</td>
<td>Channel Players</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.2.1</td>
<td>Move to Prod and Verify</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 5.4.1.2 Software Update Project Plan – Current Systems- applies to most deployments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WBS</th>
<th>Task Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td><strong>AxisTV Generic Software Update Plan</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>Deployment Planning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.1</td>
<td>AxisTV 7.0.x.x Software Feature Evaluation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.2</td>
<td>Hardware Specification Requirements Review</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.2.1</td>
<td>(Content Manager/Server)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.2.2</td>
<td>(Channel Player)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.2.3</td>
<td>Determine Hardware Compatibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.2.4</td>
<td>If not compatible consider Hardware Upgrade Program</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3</td>
<td><strong>Deployment Method</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3.1</td>
<td>Staged Deployment vs Live Deployment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3.2</td>
<td>Content Manager/Server conversion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3.3</td>
<td>Channel Player Update</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.4</td>
<td><strong>Training Needs Evaluation</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.4.1</td>
<td>Determine the level of re-training needed (if any)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.4.2</td>
<td>End User Training</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.4.3</td>
<td>Administrator Training</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.5</td>
<td><strong>Resource Planning</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.5.1</td>
<td>Content Manager/Server Update Resources</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.5.2</td>
<td>Channel Player Update Resources</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.6</td>
<td>Notify Users of downtime if needed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2</td>
<td><strong>Test Server (if applicable)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1</td>
<td><strong>Content Manager/Server</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.1</td>
<td>Backup of Production Content Manager/Server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.2</td>
<td>Installation of New AxisTV Test Content Manager/Server</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1.3</td>
<td>Validation of data and operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.2</td>
<td><strong>Channel Player</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.2.1</td>
<td>Installation of 1 or more Channel Players using Deployment Method</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.2.2</td>
<td>Observe for issues</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3</td>
<td><strong>Deployment</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.1</td>
<td><strong>Content Manager/Server - (Content Manager/Server)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.1.1</td>
<td>Backup AxisTV Content Manager/Server Database</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.1.2</td>
<td>Backup AxisTV Content Manager/Server Binary Storage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.1.3</td>
<td>Installation of AxisTV Content Manager/Server Software</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.1.4</td>
<td>Addition of new software feature licenses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.1.5</td>
<td>Validation of Content Manager/Server operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.1.5.1</td>
<td>Add new content to be used to verify publishing to Channel Players</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.2</td>
<td><strong>Channel Player - (Channel Player)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.2.1</td>
<td>Installation of AxisTV 7.0.x.x Channel Player Software using Channel Player Utility on Content Manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.2.2</td>
<td>Validation of Operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.3.2.2.1</td>
<td>Observe Channel Player for publishing of new content</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td><strong>Post Rollout</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4.1</td>
<td>Review of Logs and Operation for issues</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Pre-Installation Checklist
The following items are the responsibility of the integrator or client and must be completed and verified before Visix begins a system implementation.

5.4.1.3 Equipment Specifications

If this is an upgrade situation or the customer is supplying the hardware, the hardware must be evaluated to ensure it meets requirements for the AxisTV release. The current AxisTV Requirements are listed below.

NOTE: Visix will not warrant the performance of the Channel Player running on customer supplied hardware unless we conduct a certification process. Some hardware configurations that meet the minimum requirements have other factors that prevent the Channel Player from operating at maximum performance.

Content Manager/Server

- Processor: Pentium Core 2 Duo 2.5 GHz
- RAM: 1.0 GB DDR2 553
- Motherboard: Intel® DG33B, Intel® 965, Intel® Q45
- Graphics: OnBoard
- Network: OnBoard 10/100/1000
- HDD: 160GB SATA
- Removable media drives: 18x DVD-ROM OS: Windows® XP Pro (Optional Windows® Server 2003 with up charge)
- PC Angel hard drive recovery software

Small Form Factor/Rack-Mount Channel Player

- Processor: Pentium Core 2 Duo 2.5 GHz
- RAM: 1.0 GB DDR2 553
- Motherboard: Intel® DG33B, Intel® 965 or Intel® Q45
- Graphics: OnBoard (Intel®)
- Network: OnBoard 10/100/1000
- Audio: Onboard (Intel® HD Audio)
- HDD: 160 GB SATA
- Removable media drives: NONE
- OS: Windows® XP Pro
- PC Angel hard drive recovery software
- Options (Channel Players)
- Video Capture (WVO): Hauppauge ImpactVCB
- Video Capture with Tuner (VWOT): Hauppauge WinTV-PVR-2250 Low Profile
- Extended Video Option (GC1): Matrox Millennium PCIe 128 or PCIE LP 64

Mini Form Factor Channel Player

- Processor: Pentium Core 2 Duo 2.5 GHz
- RAM: 1.0 GB
- Motherboard: Proprietary with Intel GM45 Chipset
- Graphics: OnBoard (Intel®)
- Network: OnBoard 10/100/1000
- Audio: Onboard (Realtek HD Audio Codec)
- HDD: 160 GB
- Removable media drives: NONE
- OS: Windows® XP Pro
- PC Angel hard drive recovery software
- Wireless option available
**MP4 Room Sign Player**

- Processor: Pentium Core 2 Duo 2.5 GHz
- RAM: 1GB DDR2 553
- Motherboard: Intel® DG33B, Intel® 965 or Intel® Q45
- Graphics: OnBoard (Intel®)
- Network: OnBoard 10/100/1000
- Audio: OnBoard (Intel® HD Audio)
- HDD: 160GB SATA
- Removable media drives: NONE
- OS: Windows® XP Pro
- PC Angel hard drive recovery software
- 2 DualHead Matrox Millennium PCIe Graphics Cards
- No additional options available

**MP2 Room Sign Player**

- Processor: Pentium Core 2 Duo 2.5 GHz
- RAM: 1GB DDR2 553
- Motherboard: Intel® DG33B, Intel® 965 or Intel® Q45
- Graphics: OnBoard (Intel®)
- Network: OnBoard 10/100/1000
- Audio: OnBoard (Intel® HD Audio)
- HDD: 160GB SATA
- Removable media drives: NONE
- OS: Windows® XP Pro
- PC Angel hard drive recovery software
- 1 DualHead Matrox Millennium PCIe Graphics Card
- No additional options available

### 5.4.1.4 Location of Equipment

The location of the AxisTV Content Manager/Server and adjacent (within 6 feet) workspace for the monitor, keyboard and mouse must be ready to accept the hardware. The client must provide any additional hardware required for installation. This includes, but is not limited to, shelves, drawers, screws, and washers for a rack-mount installation. **NOTE: The Content Manager/Server ships with rack ears; however because of the weight (30 lbs) the user should consider ordering optional rack rails.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form Factor</th>
<th>Dimensions</th>
<th>Image</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rack Mount</td>
<td>17&quot; x 3.5&quot; (2RU high) x 22.5&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Weight: 31 lbs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>460 Watts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The location of AxisTV Channel Players must be ready to accept the hardware. The client must provide any additional hardware required for installation. This includes, but is not limited to, shelves, screws, and washers for a rack-mount installation. **NOTE: The 2RU Channel Player ships with rack ears; however because of the weight (30 lbs) the user should consider ordering optional rack rails.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form Factor</th>
<th>Dimensions</th>
<th>Image</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mini Form Factor</td>
<td>6 1/2&quot; x 2&quot; x 6 1/2&quot;&lt;br&gt;Weight: 3 lbs.&lt;br&gt;60 Watts</td>
<td>![Mini Form Factor Image]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small Form Factor</td>
<td>12.75&quot; x 3.9&quot; x 17.0&quot;&lt;br&gt;Weight: 15 lbs.&lt;br&gt;275 Watts</td>
<td>![Small Form Factor Image]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rack Mount</td>
<td>17&quot; x 3.5&quot; (2RU high) x 22.5&quot;&lt;br&gt;Weight: 30 lbs.&lt;br&gt;460 Watts</td>
<td>![Rack Mount Image]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Media Appliance</td>
<td>8.3&quot; (wide) x 1.7&quot; (high) x 6&quot; (deep)&lt;br&gt;Weight: 3.75 lbs.</td>
<td>![Media Appliance Image]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**5.4.1.5 Video Distribution System**

The client’s video distribution system must be operational and ready to accept the video output of the AxisTV System. The end customer will supply the appropriate video interconnection cables. These cables must be able to reach the rear of the AxisTV Channel Player(s). The video connections are:

**AxisTV Standard Channel Player**
- For Intel 965 or DG33B motherboard
  - Female HD15 for VGA
- For Intel Q45motherboard
  - Female DVI-I (DVI to VGA adapter included)
  - Female DVI-D

**Widescreen Option (GC1)**
- Female DVI-I (DVI to VGA adapter included)

**Video Window Option**
- Female RCA for composite video input.
- Female mini-DIN-4 for S-Video input.
- Female F-type for RF Connector

**5.4.1.6 Electrical Requirements**

All electrical wiring should be complete and verified. There must be two (2) available 115VAC surge-protected receptacles located within six feet of the AxisTV Content Manager/Server. One outlet is specified for the Content Manager/Server and the second is for an OFE (owner furnished equipment) monitor. There must be an available 115VAC surge-protected receptacle located within six feet of each AxisTV Channel Player.
5.4.1.7  **Network Capabilities**

The network must be capable of supporting the TCP/IP protocol. A 10/100 Base T Ethernet TCP/IP connection, terminated with an RJ45 connector and verified in working condition, must be provided to connect the AxisTV Content Manager/Server to the end customer’s local computer network. Additional 10/100 Base T Ethernet TCP/IP connections, terminated with an RJ45 connector and verified in working condition, must be provided for each AxisTV Channel Player. The network cabling must be able to reach the rear of each device.

5.4.1.8  **Network Port Usage**

All AxisTV devices will need a static identification or support for dynamic identification (DNS, WINS, NetBIOS, static IP, DHCP, etc.). The AxisTV Content Manager/Server will need to communicate over specific TCP and UDP ports, as follows:

- TCP port 21 (FTP)
- TCP port 25 (SMTP)
- TCP port 80 (HTTP)
- TCP port 110 (POP3)
- UDP port 123 (NTP)
- TCP port 6104 (AxisTV Screen Saver Clients)
- TCP port 6500 (Telnet to AxisTV Channel Players)
- TCP port 6501 (Fast File transfer between Content Manager/Server and Channel Player)
- TCP port 6502 (Fast File transfer between Content Manager/Server and Channel Player)
- UDP port 28500 (publishers – desktop messenger, text messenger)
- TCP port 28501 (Desktop Messenger – client and client listener)
- TCP port 28502 (RSS Publisher)

The end customer must provide connectivity for the AxisTV Content Manager/Server, if certain AxisTV components are installed, as follows:

- The AxisTV National Weather Service Adapter requires Internet access through TCP port 21.
- The AxisTV Dean Evans EMS® Adapter requires network access to the EMS database.
- The AxisTV Microsoft® Exchange Adapter requires network access to the designated Exchange Server
- The AxisTV CEO® Adapter requires network access to the CEO® database.
- The AxisTV Delphi® Adapter requires network access to the Delphi® EMS file.
- Screen Saver plug-in requires that the screen saver PC client machines can access the AxisTV Content Manager/Server via a specified TCP port. TCP port 6104 is the default selection.

5.4.1.9  **Resource Availability**

The client must make their network administrator available at the time of installation as well as any other resources necessary for the installation.

5.4.1.10  **Site Access**

Confirm the installation schedule and verify that the installer will have access during that time. Verify that the installer will be able to use the local network and be able to confirm the video distribution, or that end customer personnel will be available to do that for them.

5.4.1.11  **Pre-Deployment Work**

Verify that all other pre-installation work is complete.
5.5 New AxisTV Implementations

5.5.1 Setup of AxisTV

5.5.1.1 Assumptions

The following assumptions are made when deploying the quick setup. Any variation from these assumptions should be taken into consideration and incorporate the appropriate adjustments.

- A DHCP server is available
- A network switch is available with free connections for the Content Manager/Server and Channel Player(s)
- Test display devices are available in case the production display devices are not available locally (i.e. Using signal distribution or staging the installation).

5.5.1.2 Content Manager/Server

1) Unpack and check for all items
   a) Content Manager/Server Hardware
   b) AxisTV Content Manager/Server bezel
   c) Rack Ears (attached)
   d) Power Cord
   e) DVI to VGA adapter
   f) AxisTV Documentation Pack
      i) AxisTV Consolidated Manual
      ii) AxisTV Installation CD
   g) Intel® Drivers CD

2) Physical setup
   a) Connect a USB keyboard and a mouse (not included)
   b) Connect the monitor (not included) to the Content Manager/Server
   c) Connect a network cable (not included) to the Content Manager/Server and a network switch
   d) Connect the Content Manager/Server and monitor to electrical outlets
3) **AxisTV Content Manager/Server initial setup** (this step requires an Internet connection)

a) Power on the AxisTV Content Manager/Server using the power switch on the front of the unit (and the monitor)

b) Once the server boots up, the desktop wallpaper will change to a message indicating that you have a licensed Content Manager/Server and the version. If this wallpaper appears, proceed to Step 4 on the next page

or

The wallpaper will change to indicate that your Content Manager/Server is Not Licensed. Follow the steps starting with step d) below to license your Content Manager/Server

c) From the “Start/All Programs/Visix” menu, Click on “Initialize Device”
d) Initialize Device will begin. Your license key should automatically populate. If it does not, enter your license key in the spaces provided. The License Key can be obtained by looking in the AxisTV Installation directory for the Key.txt file. If you do not find this file, click the “Register Me” icon on the desktop and request licensing. Visix will then send you an email with all required license files. Copy and paste ALL files into the License directory.

NOTE: The Installation Directory is typically
C:\Program Files\Visix\AxisTV Content Services\License

Once the license key has been entered click “Proceed”.

If any errors occur, email them to support@visix.com for assistance.

e) When “Initialize Device” completes, you will be prompted to reboot the server. Once rebooted, the wallpaper should change to indicate a licensed Content Manager/Server as shown here. If it does not, please contact support@visix.com for assistance.
4) Logging into the AxisTV application for the first time
   a) Double-Click on the “AxisTV” icon on the desktop.
   b) Login to the AxisTV System using the default user id “administrator” and password “tech”
   c) Click “Now Playing”, then “Bulletins” and you will see the default playlist. (As shown below)

5) Adding Each Channel Player to the Content Manager/Server

   *If you are using v.7.0.9 and higher, please skip to instructions for your version below

   a) Ensure the Channel Player is on the network and powered on
   b) Login to the AxisTV Content Manager/Server
   c) Select the “Configure” menu then “Channel Players” then “Current Settings”
   d) Click the “Add” button
   e) Enter the “Network (DNS) Name” or IP Address of the Channel Player (from the factory the Channel Player name is “AxisTV99999999” where 99999999 is the serial number of the Channel Player which can be found on the back of the case)
   f) Enter the “Friendly Name” such as “Break room”
   g) Enter the “Telnet Port” of 6500 (default)
   h) Click “Finish”
   i) If you are returned to the “Current Settings” screen, the addition was successful
   j) If the Content Manager/Server cannot reach the Channel Player you will be notified. If this happens, proceed to the Channel Player and verify the name or IP address entered is correct and that the network cable is connected.
*If you are using v.7.0.9 and higher, please use the following instructions for adding a Channel Player to the Content Manager/Server*

a) Ensure the Channel Player is on the network and powered on

b) Login to the AxisTV Content Manager/Server

c) Select the “Configure” menu then “Channel Players” then “Hardware”

d) Enter the “Network (DNS) Name” or IP Address of the Channel Player (from the factory the Channel Player name is “AxisTV99999999” where 9999999 is the serial number of the Channel Player which can be found on the back of the case)

e) Enter the “Friendly Name” such as “Break room”

f) Enter the “Telnet Port” of 6500 (default)

g) Click “Finish”

h) If you are returned to the “Hardware” screen, the addition was successful

   If the Content Manager/Server cannot reach the Channel Player you will be notified. If this happens, proceed to the Channel Player and verify the name or IP address entered is correct and that the network cable is connected.

6) **Validation of Operation**

   Operation and communications of the system should be validated using the following methods

   a) A bulletin slide should be added to Playlist 1 and each Channel Player should be visually inspected to verify that the Content Manager/Server delivered the new bulletin

7) **Setup of Options**

   a) Each one of the licensed options should be setup as outlined in Content Manager/Server Feature Configuration chapter of this manual
5.6 Channel Player

The following steps should be performed on each Channel Player(s) being deployed.

1) Unpack and check for all items
   a) 2RU/Small Form Factor/Mini Form Factor Channel Player
   b) AxisTV Channel Player bezel (2RU only)
   c) Rack Ears and four (4) screws - attached (2RU only)
   d) Power Cord
   e) DVI to VGA Adapter
   f) Intel® Drivers CD
   g) VGA Adapters & drivers CD(s), if the extended widescreen option was ordered
   h) S-Video to Composite video cable, if Scan Converter/NTSC option was ordered
   i) Tuner Card S-Video/Composite Adapter (if the Video Window with Tuner Card was ordered)
   j) Power Brick with AC cord
2) Physical setup (See diagrams that follow)

1. Connect a USB keyboard and a mouse (only for testing)

2. Connect the monitor (not included) to the computer using the DVI connector and VGA adapter (included), if needed. (For extended graphics option, widescreen, use connector indicated on diagram)

3. Connect a network cable (not included) to the player and network switch

4. Connect the computer and monitor to electrical outlets

5. Turn on the computer and monitor

Note: The GC1 Extended Widescreen Card and the VWO Video Window Card are optional features

Note: IEEE-1394 and E-SATA are not supported with AxisTV
Note: The CPQ Card and the VWOT Video Window Tuner Card are optional features.

Note: IEEE-1394 and ESATA are not supported with AxisTV.
3) **AxisTV Channel Player Initial Setup**

   a) Power on the AxisTV Channel Player using the power switch on the front of the unit (and the monitor)

   b) Once the Channel Player boots up, you will see the default screen layout similar to the one at the right

   ![Note: Some Channel Players have a default layout containing three windows and a crawl](image)

4) **Channel Player Default Settings**

   a) Note the default Channel Player Name will be "AxisTV followed by the Computer Serial Number(ex: AxisTV999999). This Computer Serial Number is printed on the white label on the top right, front corner the computer.

   b) The default Communication Setting is to use DNS to automatically obtain an IP address. In this case, the Content Manager/Server will connect to the Channel Player using the DNS name (ex: AxisTV999999)

   c) The default Display Resolution is 1024x768

5) **Advanced Channel Player Options**

   *NOTE: At this point, you can change the default options on the Channel Player, options listed below are going to be changed, the options should be changed before adding the Channel Player to the Content Manager/Server.*

   - Display Resolution
   - Computer Name
   - IP Address

   See **Channel Player Options** section for instructions on changing these settings
6) Adding Each Channel Player to the Content Manager/Server (if this was not completed earlier)

*If you are using v.7.0.9 and higher, please skip to instructions for your version below

Ensure the Channel Player is on the network and powered on
a) Login to the AxisTV Content Manager/Server
b) Select the “Configure” menu then “Channel Players” then “Current Settings”
c) Click the “Add” button
d) Enter the “Network (DNS) Name” or IP Address of the Channel Player (from the factory the Channel Player name is “AxisTV99999999” where 99999999 is the serial number of the Channel Player which can be found on the back of the case)
e) Enter the “Friendly Name” such as “Break room”
f) Enter the “Telnet Port” of 6500 (default)
g) Click “Finish”
h) If you are returned to the “Current Settings” screen, the addition was successful
i) If the Content Manager/Server cannot reach the Channel Player you will be notified. If this happens, proceed to the Channel Player and verify the name or IP address entered is correct and that the network cable is connected.

*If you are using v.7.0.9 and higher, please use the following instructions for adding a Channel Player to the Content Manager/Server

a) Ensure the Channel Player is on the network and powered on
b) Login to the AxisTV Content Manager/Server
c) Select the “Configure” menu then “Channel Players” then “Hardware”
d) Click the “Add” button
e) Enter the “Network (DNS) Name” or IP Address of the Channel Player (from the factory the Channel Player name is “AxisTV99999999” where 99999999 is the serial number of the Channel Player which can be found on the back of the case)
f) Enter the “Friendly Name” such as “Break room”
g) Enter the “Telnet Port” of 6500 (default)
h) Click “Finish”
i) If you are returned to the “Hardware” screen, the addition was successful
   If the Content Manager/Server cannot reach the Channel Player you will be notified. If this happens, proceed to the Channel Player and verify the name or IP address entered is correct and that the network cable is connected.
6  Applying AxisTV Software Updates

Updating your AxisTV s will require one of the following methods. Because of changes in architecture, two distinct approaches exist. A summary of each is shown below:

6.1  Important Information – Read and understand before proceeding!

All AxisTV devices (Content Manager/Server and Channel Players) within a single system must be running the same version of AxisTV software.

Make sure you have obtained the 7.0.x.x. Content Manager/Server and Channel Player installers before proceeding. Contact Visix for the software.

Back up the database before you proceed (see instructions in Section 15.2) If you do not backup your database, you could lose all existing data in AxisTV if there is a problem with the update.

Any version prior to 5.4.1 must be upgraded to 5.4.1 before upgrading to 7.0.x.x. Contact Visix for more information before proceeding.

6.1.1  Hardware Evaluation

When updating your AxisTV system, ensure that your hardware meets the minimum specifications as outlined in the Chapter titled “Pre-Installation Checklist”. If your hardware does not meet the minimum specifications, you will see performance degradation in the AxisTV Channel Player software. The areas that will be affected are:

- Smoothness of text ticker
- Speed and smoothness of transitions
- Video Playback (MPEG, AVI, etc)

If you are unsure how to proceed, you can email the AxisTV Channel Player and content manager serial numbers (located on a label on the top of the computer) and Visix can help you determine the impact on your performance if you apply the update.

Content Manager/Servers Recommendations

- The previous version of AxisTV software must be uninstalled
- For most customers, if MSDE was previously installed, it should be left in place (AxisTV Database Services) and the SQL Server 2005 Express should NOT be installed when prompted.
- The destination directory should be changed to the directory used by the older version of AxisTV
6.2 Updating from AxisTV 6.0.1 or higher

To upgrade from a version of AxisTV prior to version 6.0.1, please contact Visix for assistance.

6.2.1 Content Manager/Server

1. **Back up the database** (see instructions in Section 15.2) If you do not backup your database, you could lose all existing data in AxisTV if there is a problem with the upgrade.

2. Go to Start|Programs|Channel Player Utility and Stop all AxisTV Services

3. If updating from version 7.0.13 or earlier, Manually rename the following files:
   - C:\Program Files\Visix\AxisTV Content Services\RSS\Default.xml
   - C:\Program Files\Visix\AxisTV Content Services\Web\web.config

   As
   - C:\Program Files\Visix\AxisTV Content Services\RSS\Default.xml.old
   - C:\Program Files\Visix\AxisTV Content Services\Web\web.config.old

4. Run Start | Settings | Control Panel | Add/Remove Programs

5. Remove AxisTV Content Services application

6. Reboot

7. Create a Content 7.0.x.x folder in the C:\Program Files\Visix (or TEI)\Installers\AxisTV folder and copy the Content Services 7.0.x.x executable into it (setup.exe)

8. From the Content 7.0.x.x folder run the Content Services 7.0.x.x executable.

   - Acknowledge the dialog box by clicking 'Install'. You may see the following dialog box which will ask you whether or not you want to install SQL Server 2005 Express. For most customers, if MSDE was previously installed, it should be left in place (AxisTV Database Services) and the SQL Server 2005 Express should NOT be installed when prompted. If you choose to keep your old MSDE 2000 Database, you should answer 'No' at the following question: “AxisTV Content Services optionally uses Microsoft® SQL Server 2005 Express. Would you like to install it now?” If you choose to migrate your data to the new SQL Server 2005, then contact Visix for instructions on how to migrate your data.

   - **If prompted, select “Yes” to install .NET Framework 2.0:** Must be installed in order to execute AxisTV 7.0.x.x

   - Accept the End User License agreement then click on Install

   - Click on Finish

   - Install shield wizard will run to install AxisTV Content Services

   Accept the EULA then click Next
• **Install to** - For **UPGRADES**, be sure to change the location to the previous version location if needed (usually C:\Program Files\TEI\AxisTV) by selecting the 'Change' button. Normally AxisTV is located in C:\Program Files\Visix\AxisTV Content Services. If this is the case, you do not need to change anything.

• **Click Next, then Install, then click Finish when complete**

9. Reboot

10. Run Start | Programs | AxisTV | Upgrade Device

• Navigate to ‘C:/program files/visix/axisv content services’ and delete the file ‘tei.common.upgradedevice.dat’ if it exists

• Uncheck the Upgrade From 5.4.1 checkbox

• Click proceed. The Upgrade device will go through several steps of upgrading and will prompt you that the upgrade is complete. If any of these steps fail, you will receive an error message. If this occurs, please contact Visix Tech Support

11. If upgrade is successful, Reboot

12. **IIS**: After installation you must verify that ASP.NET runtime associated with the default Web Site (normally named AxisTV) is **2.0**, not 1.1. If it remains 1.1 the Web User Interface will fail to execute and respond with resource not found errors.

### 6.2.1.1 Channel Player

The Channel Player Utility can be used to update AxisTV 6.0.1 and above Channel Players from the Content Manager/Server without the need to physically visit each Channel Player. The Channel Player utility will not, however, install new drivers or supporting applications such as Adobe Flash® or the MPEG-2 Codec.

1. Go to the Start | Programs | Visix | Channel Player Utility|
2. Select the AxisTV Services Tab at the top of the screen.
3. Click the "List Services" button then select all services by holding the shift key and selecting the first and last service with the mouse.
4. Click on "Stop Selected AxisTV Services"
5. Select the "Update Players" Tab at the top of the screen.
6. Select each Channel Player that needs to be updated and press the "Update Selected Players" button (for large systems with many Channel Players, you should only select 4 or 5 at a time to reduce the chance of errors)
7. The Update window below will display the progress of each Channel Player as it is updated

When complete, go back to the AxisTV Services Tab, select all services again and click on "Start Selected AxisTV Services"
7 Channel Player Options

The following chapter contains information about how to operate the Channel Player and its associated options. In order to make any changes to the Channel Player, you must access the player console.

7.1 Accessing the Channel Player Console

1. With a keyboard and mouse connected to the Player, press the ESC key. This action may need to be repeated to interrupt the media player.

2. A bouncing screen saver image will instruct you to use the keyboard or mouse to login

3. When prompted by the login screen, enter your user name and password and select ENTER. The default credentials: user name – admin; password – tech.

4. The Player Console will appear as shown above

5. If you do not interact with the Console for 30 seconds the Player will return to the bouncing image.

7.2 Channel Player Console

The Channel Player Interface (Console) is designed to enable you quick access to a number of tools to manipulate Channel Player settings. You can access each setting with a mouse or the shortcut key in parentheses next to each setting title.

Channel Player Settings

- play! (p) – launches the media player delivering scheduled content to associated displays.

- display (1) – allows the user to manipulate the Players display settings.

- video window (2) – provides control over the video window option if available.

- sound (3) – allows users to manipulate the audio inputs and output of the Channel Player.

- communications (4) – designate the appropriate communications settings DHCP (automatic addressing) or static IP address.

- date & time (5) – allows the user to set the current local date, time and time zone for the Player.

- security (6) – change the user name and password to prevent unauthorized access.

- statistics (7) – provides Channel Player statistics regarding used disk space and historical file size data. This functionality is not activated in version 7.0.x.x.

- command prompt (c) – opens a Telnet session to the Channel Player, type maintenance mode to access the Windows® shell.
- firmware update (f) – allows users to update Channel Player firmware from the console.
- logout (l) – saves current settings and exits the Console. Returns to the Screen Saver requesting the user to press any key to login. If you intended to launch to the media player, select play! (p) from the Console.
- shutdown (u) – shuts down the Player. This is not a reboot command. If you want to turn the Player on after it is shut down, you will be required to do so at the Player.
- reboot (r) – reboots the Channel Player.
- tuner (t) - launches the tuner card configuration program selector utility

7.3 Accessing the Windows® Layer

In rare circumstances, you may find it necessary to access the Windows® layer of the Channel Player. To exit the Channel Player shell and access Windows®, you will need a keyboard and mouse connected to the Channel Player. If the display associated with the Channel Player is not readily viewable, a local monitor will be useful. If you prefer, you can use Remote Desktop Connection to access the players. The players come with RDP enabled by default. To access Windows®, follow the steps below.

1. With the Channel Player playing, click the mouse and press ESC
2. Login to the player menu. Username is “admin” password is “tech
3. Select the Command Prompt(c) option
4. At the C: Type in “maintenancemode”
   
   NOTE – at this stage you are viewing the Windows® desktop. However, icons and other visible items are hidden. Drag your mouse to the lower part of the screen to view the Windows® task bar.

5. If the Channel Player application interferes with your work, then press CTRL-ALT-DEL to bring up the task manager. In the Task Manager select Visix Multimedia Player Console and click the End Task button in the lower left corner of the dialog box
6. If prompted, click End Now
7. If you receive a Player Host Process notice, click Don’t Send
7.4  Video Window

Users can select to test the video source (Composite or S-Video), select video format (NTSC or PAL), and manipulate brightness, contrast, hue and or saturation.

**NOTE – there are corresponding settings that should be edited on the Content Manager/Server to ensure that video window content and accompanying audio are delivered correctly.**

7.5  Audio Options

The audio properties of the Channel Player can be changed using this screen. The properties include:

- Player Audio Output
- Internal Audio Input – background music, multimedia audio
- External Audio Input – Video Window Audio

Select and manipulate the internal audio input (wave, sw synth, CD volume, etc…) and select and manipulate the physical external audio input (rear blue in, rear pink in, etc…). The output device slider included to show the current output level, but cannot be used to change the master output level. The Channel Player supports the onboard Intel® HD audio and the accompanying Realtek mixer.

7.6  Channel Player Name & IP Address (Communications)

The Communications dialog is used to change the:

- Player Name
- Static IP Information
- Telnet Port

If assigning a static IP address, you should know the IP address, subnet mask and gateway address. The Channel Player uses TELNET port 6500 for remote communications. Firewall-Exempt port functionality is not activated in version 7.0.x.x.

**NOTE – the Player will reboot after you make changes to these settings.**
7.7 Time, Date and Time Zone

The Date and Time Setting screen can be used to update the date, time and time zone. Be sure to click apply after changing the date and time, then again after changing the time zone.

7.8 Display Resolution

This screen is used to change the Channel Player display properties. Be sure to click on a Display before entering or changing settings. These settings include:

- Screen width in pixels
- Screen height in pixels
- Color Depth
- Refresh rate in Hz

If the Player will not accept your edits, it is because the onboard drivers or extended video card have not been configured to support your selection. If this is the case, you will have to exit the Player shell and manipulate the settings at the Windows® level.

NOTE – there are corresponding settings that should be edited on the Content Manager/Server to ensure the content blocks scale appropriately.

7.9 Security

A non-blank user name and password are required. The user name is NOT case-sensitive, but the password IS case-sensitive. Spaces are NOT allowed and will automatically be omitted. Each value is limited to 20 characters. Changes are permanent and should be documented accordingly.

Default user name is “admin”; password is “tech”.

7.10 Statistics

The Statistics screen can be used to display the overall disk space in use to store player files. The detail information is not activated.
7.11 Command Prompt

The Command Prompt option is used to start a local Telnet session as shown below.

7.12 Firmware Update

The firmware update function is used to update the Channel Player software.

1. Once the firmware option is selected, the user is prompted to validate if they really want to use this option.

2. Users are prompted to locate the device directory that contains the updates.

3. Once the device update file is selected, the update process will begin. If you are unsure, please select Cancel and contact technical support before proceeding.

   CAUTION – once the firmware update begins, it cannot be stopped.

7.13 Shutdown & Reboot

The shutdown and reboot options allow the user to shutdown or reboot the player as well as select whether the player will start in “Console” mode or “Playback” mode.

NOTE – when you select this command, you will be prompted to select whether or not you want the Player to launch the media player once the machine reboots.
7.14 Channel Player Emulator

The AxisTV Channel Player Emulator is available for customers using AxisTV v.7.0.20 and higher that provides the capability of viewing content in a channel player layout on their PC or other workstation. The Channel Player Emulator is added to the AxisTV Content Manager in the same manner as adding a Channel Player, so you must have an available player license for each emulator.

**Step 1: Activate the Updated Licensing on the AxisTV Content Manager**

- Save the attached License File(s) to the AxisTV License directory, typically "C:\Program Files\Visix\AxisTV Content Services\License"

- A License Manager tool is included with AxisTV that allows you to activate a new License Keys. On the Content Manager, run Start | Programs | Visix | License Manager. Click File | Activate Feature. Select "I already have an activation key" and click Next. For each new license key, click Import Activation Key to import the key and then click Activate.

**Step 2: Install the AxisTV Channel Player Software onto client PC**

- A link to download the Emulator installer will be sent to you from Visix when you purchase the Emulator. Download the zip file and extract it onto the PC that will emulate a player.

- Run the AxisTV Emulator setup.exe file. The InstallShield Wizard will guide you through the installation.
Choose a complete install. By default, the Emulator will install on the PC to the ‘C:\Program Files\Visix\AxisTV Channel Player Emulator’ folder.

Launch the Emulator from Start | All Programs | Visix | Launch Channel Player Emulator.

Step 3: Configure the Channel Player Emulator’s initial settings from its Console

Accessing the Channel Player Console

6. Press the Esc key on your keyboard. This action may need to be repeated to interrupt the media player.
7. A bouncing screen saver image will instruct you to use the keyboard or mouse to login
8. When prompted by the login screen, enter your user name and password and select ENTER. The default credentials are:

Username – admin
Password – tech
9. Acknowledge the Welcome dialog box

10. The Player Console will appear (image right)

NOTE: If you do not interact with the Console for 30 seconds the Player will return to the bouncing image.

The Channel Player Interface (Console) is designed to enable you quick access to a number of tools to manipulate Channel Player settings. You can access each setting with a mouse or the shortcut key in parentheses next to each setting title.

**Channel Player Settings**

- **play! (p)** – launches the media player display engine.
- **display (1)** – allows the user to manipulate the Players display settings. These settings will change the PC’s display settings. You will want to set them to match the Channel Player you are emulating.
- **video window (2)** – provides control over the video window option. This option requires specific hardware and will not be available for most customers.
- **sound (3)** – allows users to select the internal and external audio sources.
- **communications (4)** – configure the appropriate communications settings, i.e., DHCP (automatic addressing) or static IP address. These settings will change the PC’s network settings so are not typically changed.
- **date & time (5)** – allows the user to set the current local date, time and time zone for the Player. These settings will change the PC’s date and time settings so are not typically changed.
- **security (6)** – change the user name and password to prevent unauthorized access.
- **statistics (7)** – provides Channel Player statistics regarding used disk space and historical file size data. This functionality is not activated in version 7.0.x.x.
- **command prompt (c)** – opens a Telnet session to the Channel Player. This feature is not needed with the Emulator.
- **firmware update (f)** – allows users to update Channel Player firmware from the console. This functionality has been replaced with the Channel Player Utility on the Content Manager.
- **logout (l)** – saves current settings and exits the Console. Returns to the Screen Saver requesting the user to press any key to login. If you intended to launch to the media player, select play! (p) from the Console.
- **shutdown (u)** – shuts down the Player. This feature does not apply to the Emulator.
- **reboot (r)** – reboots the Channel Player. This feature does not apply to the Emulator.
- **tuner (t)** – launches the tuner card testing utility. This option requires specific hardware and will not be available for most customers.
Step 4: Add the Channel Player Emulator to the Content Manager

j) Ensure the Emulator PC is on the network and the Channel Player Emulator is running
k) Browse to the Content Manager and login with administrative privileges
l) Select the “Configure” menu then “Channel Players” then “Hardware”
m) Click the “Add” button
n) Enter the “Network (DNS) Name” or IP Address of the Emulator PC.
o) Enter a “Friendly Name” such as “Break room”
p) Enter the “Telnet Port” of 6500 (default)
q) Click “Finish”
r) If you are returned to the “Hardware” screen, the addition was successful
   If the Content Manager cannot reach the Emulator PC you will be notified. If this happens, proceed to the Emulator PC and verify the name or IP address entered is correct and that the network cable is connected.

Step 5: Copy an Existing Layout to the new Channel Player Emulator

- Using the Layout Editor via the AxisTV Desktop or Web interface, copy a layout from an existing Channel Player to the Emulator. Please refer to the AxisTV Comprehensive Manual for detailed instructions, or click the “?” icon in the web interface to access on-line support documentation.

Step 6: Stopping the Emulator

To stop the Emulator, use ALT-TAB to select ‘Stop the Channel Player or Emulator’, and press the Space Bar to select Stop. The ‘Stop the Channel Player or Emulator’ application will close itself in a few seconds.
8 Content Manager/Server Options

8.1 Changing the Content Manager/Server Name

Each AxisTV device was given a unique computer name at the time of manufacture. The default name is AXISTV<serial#>, e.g., AXISTV735222 for a unit with the serial number 735222.

The AxisTV database uses the computer name as the key to its structure. Therefore, a computer name change requires changes in AxisTV as well.

1. Change the Windows® computer name
   a. Right click My Computer and select properties
   b. Select the “Computer Name” tab
   c. Click the “Change” button
   d. Enter the new computer name
   e. Press “OK”, the Press “OK” again

2. Reboot the server

3. Go to Start | Programs | Visix | Configure Device
   a. Go to the Connection tab
      i. Enter the new computer name as Database Server (DNS/IP)
      ii. Click “Apply” to save settings
   b. Go to the Configure tab
      i. From the Change section select Device Name
      ii. Select the computer whose name you are changing
      iii. Enter the new name
      iv. Click Change
   c. Exit the application

4. Go to Start | Programs | Visix | Configure Web Interface
   a. Go to the Connection tab
      i. Enter the new computer name as Application Server (DNS/IP)
      ii. Click “Apply” to save settings
   b. Exit the application

5. Go to Start | Programs | Visix | Configure Web Public Interface
   a. Go to the Connection tab
      i. Enter the new computer name as Application Server (DNS/IP)
      ii. Click “Apply” to save settings
   b. Exit the application

6. Go to Start | Programs | Visix | Configure Web Content Upload Service
   a. Go to the Connection tab
      i. Enter the new computer name as Application Server (DNS/IP)
      ii. Click “Apply” to save settings

7. Exit the application

8. Reboot the server
8.2 Add a Channel Player to a Content Manager/Server

*If you are using v.7.0.9 and higher, please refer to instructions below

a) Login to the AxisTV Content Manager/Server

b) Select the “Configure” menu then “Channel Players” then “Current Settings”

c) Click the “Add” button

d) Enter the “Network (DNS) Name” or IP Address of the Channel Player (from the factory the Channel Player name is “AxisTV99999999” where 99999999 is the serial number of the Channel Player which can be found on the back of the case if you have changed the Name in the previous section, use the new name.)

e) Enter the “Friendly Name” such as “Break room”

f) Enter the “Telnet Port” of 6500

g) Click “Finish”

h) If the Content Manager/Server cannot reach the Channel Player you will be notified.

i) If you are returned to the “Current Settings” screen, the addition was successful.

If you are using v.7.0.9 and higher, please refer to the following instructions to add a Channel Player to the Content Manager/Server

a) Login to the AxisTV Content Manager/Server

b) Select the “Configure” menu then “Channel Players” then “Hardware”

c) Click the “Add” button

d) Enter the “Network (DNS) Name” or IP Address of the Channel Player (from the factory the Channel Player name is “AxisTV99999999” where 99999999 is the serial number of the Channel Player which can be found on the back of the case if you have changed the Name in the previous section, use the new name.)

e) Enter the “Friendly Name” such as “Break room”

f) Enter the “Telnet Port” of 6500

g) Click “Finish”

h) If the Content Manager/Server cannot reach the Channel Player you will be notified.

i) If you are returned to the “Hardware” screen, the addition was successful.
8.3 IP Address

AxisTV servers come from the factory configured for DHCP operation. If this is not applicable to your network then your network administrator should provide you with the following information:

- IP address
- Subnet mask address
- Workgroup/domain name (optional)
- Gateway address
- DNS service addresses (optional)

Once you have obtained this information, right-click on the My Network Places icon on the desktop, and click on Properties. In the window that opens, right-click on the Local Area Connection icon and click on Properties. Choose Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) and click on the Properties button (See figure 2).

Type in the IP address, Subnet Mask address, and Default Gateway address provided to you by your network administrator (See figure 3). Type in the DNS addresses, and then click OK. Close all associated open windows.

Network Connection Properties

Network Addresses
9 Media Appliances

*You must have v.7.0.12 or higher to add media appliances*

9.1 Physical Set-up

The following steps should be performed on each Media Appliance being deployed.

1) Unpack and check for all items

a) Media Appliance

b) Power Adapter

c) Mounting brackets (2) and screws (4)

2) Physical setup (See diagrams below)

1. Connect a network cable (not included) to the media appliance and network switch

2. Connect the display (not included) to the media appliance using either the SVideo, Composite, or DVI output connectors (For VGA connection use the included DVI-to-VGA adapter)

3. Connect the composite video source to the Composite input connector (If using VWO)

4. Apply the configuration to appliance by inserting the USB thumb drive in one of the USB ports on the Media Appliance and boot the appliance (supply power or remove and resupply power)

5. Turn on the display
9.2 Configuration

**Important!**
- License keys must be generated and applied to the content manager prior to performing any other steps.
- The count of Media Appliances cannot exceed the license count.
- The count of Media Appliances with Video Windows cannot exceed the license count.

Media Appliance configuration is comprised of the following steps:
- License the content manager
- Enable appliance screens in Web UX (web.config)
- Install and configure publishers
- Configure publishers in the Web UX
- Configure the distributor
- Configure content lists
- Configure appliances
- Apply configuration to appliances (USB boot)
- Assign layouts
- Create and schedule content

- Workflows for Media Appliances can be enabled or disabled. The default value is “false”. To enable a Media Appliance and access workflows through the web interface, the value must be set to “true”.

  ```xml
  <add key="EnableMediaAppliance" value="false"/>
  ```

  Once this step is completed, you will see “Media Appliance” functions in the AxisTV web interface under the navigation menu.

- Navigate to **Configure | Media Appliances | Hardware** in the AxisTV web interface.

9.3 Install & Configure Publishers/Distributor

**Important!**
- License keys must be generated and applied to the content manager prior to performing any other steps.
- The count of Media Appliances cannot exceed the license count.
- The count of Media Appliances with Video Windows cannot exceed the license count.

1. Workflows for Media Appliances can be enabled or disabled. Once this step is completed, you will see “Media Appliance” functions in the AxisTV web interface under the navigation menu. Use notepad to open the web.config document at C:\program files\Visix\axis\content services\web and make the following edit:

   ```xml
   the default value is “false”, to enable, the value must be set to “true”
   <add key="EnableMediaAppliance" value="false"/>
   ```

2. The AxisTV Content Services installer has a new feature within the Content Publishers group. The installer must be run on every device that will serve as an appliance publisher. Moreover, IIS must also be installed on these devices as the media appliances poll for content via standard web protocols (http). Once the publisher is installed and IIS is configured by the installer, the publisher must be configured in the Web Ux. For devices other than the content manager, run **Prepare Publishers**. For the content manager, run either **Initialize Device** or **Upgrade Device** as appropriate:
3. The Tei.Settings.xml file has been extended to include the configuration parameters for the publisher and the distributor. Below are the portions of the file that control the Media Appliance Publisher and Distributor:

```xml
<MediaAppliancePublisher
    run="false"
    runDelay="60"
    listenerPort="28504"
    networkChunkSizeInKb="100"
    purgeTimeout="60"
    publishRoot="C:\Program Files\Visix\AxisTV Content Services\Web\AppliancePublisher" />
```

As with other publishers, the appliance publisher runs under the "AxisTV Publishing Services" service.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>true/false controls whether the publisher runs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>runDelay</td>
<td>Delay used by the service to wait for dependencies within Windows XP to become available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>listenerPort</td>
<td>TCP port that the publisher listens to receive content from the distributor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>networkChunkSizeInKb</td>
<td>Throttles the size of data sent from the distributor in a single call (so we don’t flood the network)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>purgeTimeout</td>
<td>Number of minutes to wait between purge cleanup cycles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>publishRoot</td>
<td>The file system location of the virtual directory maintained by IIS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```xml
<MediaApplianceDistributor
    run="false"
    runDelay="60"
    distributionCycle="15" />
```
As with other distributors, the appliance distributor runs under the "AxisTV Publishing Services" service.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>true/false controls whether the distributor runs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>runDelay</td>
<td>Delay used by the service to wait for dependencies within Windows XP to become available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distributionCycle</td>
<td>The number of minutes to wait between distribution cycles. The default value is 15 – a higher value can be specified but a lower value is not recommended.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Once the publisher(s) are running, you can specify them to the content manager using the Web Ux. The Configure | Media Appliances | Publishers screen adds, changes and deletes known publishers. These appliances are embedded Linux devices and may not be able to resolve local hostnames; it may be necessary to give the publishers a static IP or reserved DHCP address and use it in the Publishing URL.

- **Listener DNS/IP** - Each publisher must listen for updates from the Content Manager/Server. Your network or IT administrator can provide this name or IP address.

- **Description** - The description you provide will be shown in other screens.

- **Listener Port** - The TCP port number of the publisher. This is the port on which the publisher receives content from the content distributor. This value can be changed as needed.

- **Publishing URL** - The URL that the media appliances should use when polling for new or updated content. This URL will normally be in the form: http://host-or-ip/AppliancePublisher. The host-or-ip is usually the IP address of the publisher.

*Note: If you change the publishing URL for a publisher that has assigned media appliances you will need to regenerate the configuration files for the affected appliances or they will continue to use the OLD publishing URL.*

Any actions (add, change, delete) will take effect the next time the Media Appliance Distributor runs.
9.4 Configure Hardware

The Configure | Media Appliances | Hardware screen allows you to add, change and remove media appliance hardware from the installation. It also allows you to reboot and shutdown individual or multiple appliances.

**Important!**
In order to add an appliance you have to know its MAC address. Each appliance has a sticker beside its Ethernet port. This sticker has two rows of 6 hexadecimal numbers. All 12 digits represent the MAC address and must be specified. As an example, the MAC address for the pictured appliance is 000BAB15643B.

- **Device ID** - Enter the 12 character device Id (MAC Address) of the appliance. This is normally on a sticker beside the Ethernet port.

- **Description** - This is the description shown in other screens, since Device Ids are cryptic.

- **Copy settings from** - If you wish to specify appliances that are similar you can copy the settings from an existing appliance and just modify the Network, Publisher, Video Window or Display Output settings that are different.

- **Network section** - Each appliance maintains network settings. You can choose either automatic IP or static IP addressing. If you are unsure please consult your local IT network administrator.

- **Publisher section** - Content is distributed from the Content Manager/Server to one or more Appliance Publishers. The publishers actually provide content to the appliances. Each appliance must be configured to point to one publisher.

- **Video Window section** - This section is available IF there are enough licenses. You should not enable Video Window if you know the media appliance doesn't support video feed. Once enabled you can select the video signal type: NTSC or PAL.

- **Display Output section** - The media appliance can output signal through either the connectors or the connector.

- **SVideo/Composite options** - You must choose the video signal type to output. NTSC or PAL are supported.

- **DVI/VGA options** - You must choose the video signal type and the width and height of the frame. When you select a format the screen provides the default frame width and height, but you can change it. The formats include SD (standard definition) and HD (high definition) choices.

- **Save** – Saves your changes at any time.
- **Cancel** – Cancels your changes at any time.

- **Generate Configuration Files or Copy Configuration Files** - Once you have established all the network and video settings for an appliance you can generate configuration files that will configure the appliance. These files are generated with the buttons in the lower-right corner of the Add/Edit screen.
  
  - When you are ready to apply network and video settings to an appliance you must generate both files and save them to the root directory of a USB thumb drive.
  - You can use the thumb drive one of the USB ports on the back of the appliance, and boot the appliance (supply power or reboot by removing power then re-supplying power).
9.5 Configure Layouts

**Important!**
The Media Appliance configuration must be completed before you can select a layout. Please refer to Media Appliance Configuration for detailed instructions.

The Configure | Media Appliances| Layouts screen provides a preview of the current layout, view stock layouts, and apply layouts that are available.

When you select an appliance from the list, the layout list is refreshed automatically and the currently applied layout is selected automatically. If there is no currently applied layout you can choose one from the list.

- You may choose from 9 (nine) stock layouts.

*Note:* Media Appliances do not offer scheduled layouts, so when an appliance is added you must select one of the stock layouts.

- Select “Apply to Player” to apply a layout to an appliance.

*Note:* The amount of time it takes to see the update on the appliance depends upon your distribution and publisher configuration.

- The Summary section displays information about the selected layout.

*Note:* Layouts are always automatically stretched to fill the entire display area of the appliance.

- Layouts for media appliances do not reference particular resolutions, only aspect ratios. The distributor will automatically scale all content blocks based on the actual resolution of the appliance.

- When a layout is selected for the first time, you need to map each content block in the layout to a content list. The screen will only allow you to select type of content lists based on the number of licenses you have purchased.

- Each defined content block is represented in this list. Each block can display content from only one content list, and the layout automatically limits your choices to the correct type of content lists.

- Appliances support only one Video Capable content list, but you can specify multiple still image lists if you prefer. Most layouts provide space for a single ticker list.
The preview thumbnail identifies the content blocks using the following convention:

- V = video capable
- P = stills playlist
- T = ticker

The number following the V, P, or T corresponds to the Content Blocks section, Content List 1, 2, 3, etc.

- Use the Change button to change settings, such as “type” of content, for each block. Changes must be selected one content list at a time in order to validate the content list.

- Once you have configured the content blocks, you can apply the layout to the appliance and it will be displayed as the “Currently Applied” layout in the list. This layout will stay in effect until you select a different layout and “Apply to Appliance.”

- You can view a full-size preview by clicking the image

9.6 Configure Publishers

Media Appliances receive their content from publishers, not directly from the Content Manager/Server. Each publisher can serve multiple appliances, and the Content Manager/Server can distribute content to one or more publishers.

- **Listener DNS/IP** - Each publisher must listen for updates from the Content Manager/Server. Your network or IT administrator can provide this name or IP address.

- **Description** - The description you provide will be shown in other screens.

- **Listener Port** - The TCP port number of the publisher. This is the port on which the publisher receives content from the content distributor. This value can be changed as needed.

- **Publishing URL** - The URL that the media appliances should use when polling for new or updated content. This URL will normally be in the form: http://host-or-ip/AppliancePublisher. The host-or-ip is usually the IP address of the publisher.

  **Note:** If you change the publishing URL for a publisher that has assigned media appliances you will need to regenerate the configuration files for the affected appliances or they will continue to use the old publishing URL.

Any actions (add, change, delete) will take effect the next time the Media Appliance Distributor runs.
9.7 Configure Content Lists

Media Appliance content is grouped into Content lists. You can add an unlimited number of content lists.

- Each Content list is numbered, beginning with the number “1”.

- The Description you provide will be shown in other screens.

- Each Content List can play one content type. There are three types of content allowed:
  ➢ Video and Still Bulletins
  ➢ Still Bulletins
  ➢ Tickers

Only the Video and Still Bulletins content type supports media files and video feeds. Video feeds require that the media appliance be licensed for Video Window.

- Ticker Speed applies only to the content type Tickers. Choose Slow, Medium or Fast.

- The Volume applies only to the content type Video and Still Bulletins. Choose Low, Medium or High.

- You can change descriptions, ticker speed and volume, however the content type cannot be changed unless the content list is empty.
9.8 Schedule

Important!

1. If you have more than one endpoint to schedule a bulletin or ticker, you will see a screen similar to the image on the right. Otherwise, please skip to Schedule Part 2 below.

2. In order to schedule to a content list, you must first create a ticker or bulletin. Please refer to Section 15: AxisTV User Guide for instructions on how to create bulletins and tickers.

9.8.1 Part 1 - Schedule to Endpoint

- Select an endpoint to deliver your bulletin or ticker. You may choose one or more endpoints to deliver your content
- You will see a thumbnail preview of your bulletin
- Select Next to choose when you want your bulletin to play for the endpoints you selected (please refer to Part 2 below)

9.8.2 Part 2 – Schedule Date and Time

- Choose the content list or content lists that you want to schedule your bulletin or ticker to.
- Select when you want your bulletin to play. You have two options:
  - Choose a start date of today from the drop down menu
  - Select a starting date and an end date from the calendar.

Note: You can view all content currently scheduled for today and in the future by going to Now Playing | Media Appliances)

- Click Finished to schedule the bulletin or ticker
- Choose cancel if you do not wish to save or schedule your bulletin or ticker

9.8.3 Now Playing

The Now Playing | Media Appliances screen helps you manage bulletins, media files, tickers and video feeds that are playing on media appliance content lists. The options you have on this screen depend upon your privileges (as assigned by a system administrator).
The detailed area of the screen is controlled by which content list you choose (its type) and the privileges you have.

If the content list is video capable, and you have privilege, you can add video feeds to the list using the Add/Edit Video Feeds screen. The media appliances treat video feeds similar to media files, but you must specify how long the video feed will play.

You can filter the list based on general time measurements or by approval status.

Each non-ticker content list can have a default transition that is used between still images. You are able to change the transition only if the Change! Button appears. You must have Administer Content Settings privilege for this button to appear. The default behavior of each content list is to iterate between all 8 of the transitions supported by the media appliance.

Red Highlight = Unapproved - When a bulletin or ticker requires approval, the entire row is highlighted in red. If you have approval privileges, then all items that require approval will have an Approve button. If you do not wish to approve the item you can select Remove to remove the bulletin from Schedule.

**Bulletin Details**

Each bulletin has several controls. The dropdown list shows all the available transitions available for the bulletin.

- The "Use Default Transition" value indicates that the transition used on the content list is used.
- Edit Bulletin (and the thumbnail) allow you to edit the bulletin image (if privileged).
- Up and Down move the bulletin in the list.
- Remove from Schedule removes the bulletin from the content list.

**Ticker Details**

Each ticker has several controls.

- Edit Ticker allow you to edit the ticker (if privileged).
- Up and Down move the ticker in the list.
- Remove from Schedule removes the ticker from the content list.

**Schedule Details**

The play schedule is displayed for informational purposes. You can edit the schedule if you have privilege.
9.9 Add/Edit Media Appliance Video Feed

The Now Playing | Media Appliances | Add/Edit Video Feed screen allows you to specify the schedule for a video feed within a video capable content list. Only media appliances that are licensed for Video Window will actually play the feeds.

- Select a video content list, then click the Add or Edit Video Feed button. This action opens a new screen to add or edit the video program.
- **Title**
  This title will be displayed within the Now Playing | Media Appliances screen.
- **Show**
  You can specify a relative date range (including forever) or specific dates to start and stop.
- **Duration**
  The duration controls how long the feed plays each time the content list iterates on the media appliance.
- You can cancel adding or editing.
- Select Finish to save changes.
10 MeetingMinder Interactive Room Signs

MeetingMinder™ interactive room signs are supported by a Visix Professional or Enterprise content manager running AxisTV v.7.0.16 or higher. Read/write access to a Dean Evans & Associates EMS database or Microsoft Exchange public calendar is required for bidirectional event scheduling.

By default, MeetingMinders do not support audio playback. To playback audio, internal speakers or audio jacks may be added at time of purchase.

10.1 Physical Set-up

The following steps must be performed on each interactive MeetingMinder™.

Unpack and check for all items

- MeetingMinder™ Interactive Room Sign
- Power Adapter
- Mounting brackets (2) and screws (4)

Physical setup (see diagrams below)

- Supply power to the unit using the included power adapter
- Connect the unit to the network using a standard Ethernet cable (not included)
  
  Note: The unit’s default network configuration is set to obtain an IP address automatically via DHCP.

- Turn on the unit
10.2 Configuration

MeetingMinder™ interactive room signs require a local configuration file to be updated during the installation. The user must access the MeetingMinder’s™ Windows console either locally with a keyboard and mouse, or remotely, e.g., via Remote Desktop Protocol.

Note: To access the MeetingMinder™ via RDP, you must know its network ID, i.e., its computer name, DNS name, or IP address. Otherwise, you will need to attach a keyboard and mouse. Also, if connecting via RDP, you must reboot the device when you have finished your work.

To launch the Windows shell when the MeetingMinder™ system is currently running and displaying content, press the Alt and Tab keys on the keyboard to get focus on the application, and press the ESC key to switch to console mode. You will receive the Login Authorization Please… dialog. Enter the credentials to login to the player console. The factory default credentials are username Admin and password tech.

On the Dynamic Visual Communication Multimedia Player menu select Command Prompt (c).

At the prompt, type the command “maintenancemode” and press enter. This command will bring up the Windows desktop for the media player.
Once you are on the system’s desktop, open Windows Explorer and navigate to the folder “C:\Program Files\Visix\AxisTV Channel Player”.

For new installations, copy the file *kiosk.exe.config.new*, paste it into the same folder, and rename it to *kiosk.exe.config*, as follows:

**Step 1:** Right click on the kiosk.exe.config.new and click Copy.

**Step 2:** Right click again on the right side of the Explorer window and click Paste.

**Step 3:** Right click on the copy of kiosk.exe.config.new and rename it to kiosk.exe.config.

**Step 4:** Edit the kiosk.exe.config file by right clicking the file name and selecting Edit from the menu options.

Once in the editor, update or confirm the following three sections of the MeetingMinder™ configuration file:

**Section 1: Enable Global Pin**

Reservations created using MeetingMinder™ interactive room signs (walk-up reservations) may be protected with a personal identification number (PIN) using the keypad provided. This feature allows a user to set a 4-digit PIN during the interactive reservation process. The user is prompted to enter their PIN before they create, modify or cancel his/her meeting.

This 4-digit PIN protection feature can be turned on or off for each individual MeetingMinder™. The settings in the kiosk.exe.config file, located in the Channel Player Installation directory, *C:\Program Files\Visix\AxisTV\Channel Player* determines whether or not the PIN feature is active.

The PIN can be enabled by making the following setting changes in the kiosk.exe.config file:

```
key="Enable Pin" value="true"
```

To Enable the the PIN function within the MeetingMinder™, update the statement:

```
<add key="EnablePin" value = "false"/>  to  <add key="EnablePin" value = "true"/>
```

**Default setting:**

```
<add key="EnablePin" value="false"/>
```
Section 2: Advance Scheduling Limits

The function of setting advance scheduling limits is an optional feature that allows you to create rules for the scheduling parameters.

How a user schedules a meeting can be controlled using scheme and count variables. You may limit how many hours or days in advance a MeetingMinder™ reservation can be made, such as:

- only within the next 4 hours
- same day
- only within the next 2 days.

The default scheme setting is "0 - no limit; 'count' value is ignored". Update the scheme value in the statement, <advanceSchedulingLimit scheme="0" count="1"/></advanceSchedulingLimit>.

Use the statement below to determine the appropriate values.

```xml
<!-- scheme: possible values
0 - no limit; 'count' value is ignored
1 - limit by number of hours; scheduled meetings must end within 'count' value hours in the future
2 - limit by number of days; scheduled meetings must end within 'count' value days in the future
3 - same day limit; scheduled meetings must end by end of current day; 'count' value is ignored
-->
<advanceSchedulingLimit scheme="0" count="1"/></advanceSchedulingLimit>
```

Section 3: Set Name of Web Service/Web Server

The name of the web service and the web server that the MeetingMinder™ interacts with must be set in order to send and receive data from the content manager. This is a required setting.

This setting is completed as shown here:

Replace the yourservername and yourwebservicename with in the URL address

**Default value:**

```xml
<value>http://yourservername/yourwebservicename/InteractiveService.asmx</value>
```

**Example of completed value:**

```xml
<value>http://QA7018/interactivewebservice/interactiveservice.asmx</value>
```

Step 5: Reboot the MeetingMinder™ interactive room sign
10.3 Licensing

10.3.1 Content Manager

The interactive room management feature requires that room signs have access to a Visix Professional or Enterprise content manager running AxisTV v.7.0.16 or higher. Channel players and MeetingMinders are licensed within AxisTV as Displays. In addition, each Interactive MeetingMinder must be licensed as an Interactive Player.

Licensing for the MeetingMinder™ is activated from the License Manager, run locally on the content manager, as follows:

- Go to Start | Programs | Visix | License Manager
- Click File | Activate Feature
- Select 'I already have an activation key' and click Next
- Click 'Import Activation key' and browse to the location of the new license key file provided by Visix
- Click ‘Activate’
10.3.2 Dean Evans Adapter/Exchange Adapter

If integrating with Dean Evans EMS or Microsoft Exchange applications, the appropriate adapter must also be licensed in AxisTV using the License Manager utility described in the previous section.

Note: When licensing for both EMS Adapter and Exchange Adapter are activated on the content manager, the MeetingMinder™ gives preference to EMS, i.e., the MeetingMinder™ will only interact with the EMS Server for meeting creation and editing.

10.3.3 Third Party Software Configuration

10.3.3.1 Dean Evans and Associates EMS (If you are not using Dean Evans EMS, skip this section)

The Dean Evans Adapter screen allows you to configure the Dean Evans EMS Adapter service that regularly copies events from the Dean Evans EMS database to the AxisTV database. Once the events are copied to the AxisTV database, the AxisTV Event Schedule Plug-in automatically creates bulletins from the data.

The MeetingMinder™ interactive room sign reuses the Adapter screen for EMS database connection information only. The MeetingMinder™ is able to display and share reservations with EMS Lite, Professional and Enterprise from Dean Evans & Associates. Supported Versions of EMS are:

- EMS Lite 7.0
- EMS Professional 11.0
- EMS Enterprise 5.0
- EMS Campus 2.0
- EMS Workplace 5.0

Dean Evans EMS Prerequisites for the Interactive MeetingMinder:

- User setup (System Administration – Security – Users)
- Groups setup (Main Menu – Reservations – Reservations – Groups)
- Buildings (Configuration – Facilities – Buildings)
- Rooms (Configuration – Facilities – Rooms)
- Statuses (Configuration – Administration – Statuses)
  - The EMS administrator is required to create at least two Statuses. The Status Types required are “Cancel” and “Book Space”. These Status types populate the User interface in AxisTV on the Interactive Menu.

10.3.3.2 Configure Dean Evans & Associates EMS Server

The SQL script “EMSAPIScript.sql” must be executed on the EMS database in order to create and modify reservations and thus enable the integration between the MeetingMinder™ and EMS software. Please refer to the “EMS 3rd Party Guide to Making and Editing Reservations” from Dean Evans & Associates for more information.
Group Name/User Name

Walk-up reservations created at the MeetingMinder™ interactive room sign need to be tied to an EMS customer setup in the EMS application. The customer can be a generic account set up specifically for the MeetingMinder™. As shown below, the Tei.Settings.xml file in the Content Server Installation directory, C:\Program Files\Visix\AxisTV Content Services has been extended to include the values for the Group Name and the Username as “IMM Group” and “IMM User”.

*Note: The Group and Username, “IMM Group” and “IMM User”, need to be created in the EMS client software first and then the values copied to the Tei.Settings.xml. You may use the default values that are provided. However, the EMS database and the Tei.Settings.xml settings must match.*

```
</AxisTVWeatherPlugin>
</TraceLogging>
<GroupName value="IMM Group">
<GroupName/>
<Username value="IMM User">
</UserName>
</Tei.Settings>
```

The settings to enable an event schedule bulletin to be created from the content manager with the data imported from EMS can be configured from **Configure | Event Schedule | Dean Evans Adapter** in the AxisTV interface:

![Configure Event Schedule Dean Evans Adapter](image)

*Note: In the AxisTV interface under Configure | Event Schedule | Dean Evans Adapter, the EMS Version drop-down menu displays EMS 4.0 Lite by default.*

**MeetingMinder™ interactive room signs do not support EMS 4.0 Lite. You must select a supported version of EMS from the drop-down menu to proceed. See Section 4.1 for the list of support versions.**

### 10.3.4 Configure Exchange Server (If you are not using Exchange Server, skip this section)

Go to the **Configure | Event Schedule | Exchange Server Adapter** screen.

### 10.3.4.1 Adapter Settings

**Refresh Interval (minutes):** You can specify any value greater than 0. Recommended values include 15, 30 and 60. This controls how frequently the Exchange Adapter copies appointments from the Exchange Servers to the AxisTV database. The more frequently you update your Exchange Calendars, the smaller this number should be.
10.3.4.2 Calendar Settings

Calendar URL: You can add several calendars. Each calendar is found by using its WebDAV URL. Both public and private folders are supported, as long as they are hosted by the Exchange Server. You can pull calendars from multiple Exchange Servers as well.

Domain and User Name: Each calendar is accessed using the credentials you supply in Domain and User Name. The user needs to have high privileges to access the calendar.

Scheme: You must specify an appropriate security scheme, based on the type of authority you are using. Options are Basic, Digest, NTLM, or Kerberos.

Password: When specifying the password, you must re-enter it for validation.

Click 'Add' when you have specified all the information required to add a new calendar. All columns are required when adding a calendar, including a password.

You can change the calendar URL and credentials using the 'Change' button.

You can change passwords and delete calendars.

If you want to test the connection, you can import events immediately by clicking Import Now. If the import works, you will be shown all the events that were imported. If any errors occur communicating with the Exchange Servers, they will be displayed so you can consult with your network or Exchange administrator.

10.4 Configure Player Hardware

MeetingMinder™ interactive room signs are treated as a special type of AxisTV media player. The Configure Channel Players/Hardware screen allows you to add, change and remove media player hardware from the installation. It also lets you refresh content, reboot and shutdown individual or multiple players.

*Note: MeetingMinder™ interactive room signs must be powered on and properly configured on the network to complete this task.*

- Log into the web interface
- Using the tree menu, navigate to Configure | Channel Player | Hardware option.
- On the Channel Player/Hardware screen, click on the Add button to add a new player.
• Once you have opened the following screen, complete the form (see image below) and click the Finished button.

*Note: MeetingMinder™ interactive room signs must use the DNS Name of the media players, not the system’s IP address.*

---

10.4.1.1 **Settings for the MeetingMinder™ 1500i and MeetingMinder™ 1200i**

**Display Width**  
Type 1024 for the display width

**Display Height**  
Type 768 for the display height

**Video**  
N/A. MeetingMinder™ interactive room signs do not support the Video Window Option. Please leave the default settings for video in order for your room sign to function properly.

**Streaming**  
If Streaming License was purchased select this box. When using this feature, please be aware that playback of audio related to streamed video requires the speakers (not included with purchase of the interactive MeetingMinder, internal speakers or audio jacks can be added at the time of purchase)

**Interactive**  
If you have added an interactive MeetingMinder™ to your player hardware, you must select this box to access the Interactive Menu option and its features.

**Verified settings for the 15 inch unit**
You can refresh the playlists on an individual player, republish all content for the player, reboot it, or perform a shutdown by using the buttons at the top of the screen.

The actions can be applied to a single player or multiple players, based on how many Select boxes you check.

The screen sorts the media players by device name by default, but you can also sort by description and DNS name/address.

Changes to hardware must be applied one player at a time to prevent incompatible settings from being applied to several players at once.

Delete offers a confirmation before actually deleting the player from the installation.

**Device Name**
The name of the device, usually the computer name.

**Description**
A useful description that tells you where the player is or what function it serves.

**DNS Name/Address**
The network identity of the player hardware.

**Telnet Port**
The TCP port on which the player listens for commands. The factory default value is 6500.

**Display Width**
The width of the display surface that the player will use. The initial value is gathered during Add Channel Player, but is editable for convenience. It should match the actual media player resolution or visual anomalies can occur.

**Display Height**
The height of the display surface that the player will use. The initial value is gathered during Add Channel Player, but is editable for convenience. It should match the actual media player resolution or visual anomalies can occur.

**Interactive**
If the media player is installed as an interactive kiosk, you can designate it by checking the box. When you specify an interactive media player, you must also specify how the player and kiosk share the screen by using the Configure | Channel Players | Interactive screen.

### 10.4.2 Configure Interactive Players

Using the tree menu navigate to **Configure | Channel Player | Interactive**. The screen will display the type of Software Integration you are utilizing.
The **Configure | Channel Player | Interactive** screen serves to specify the location of the viewport for the media player. The viewport is the portion of the screen to which the player limits all content so that the kiosk can draw in the remaining area of the screen.
Verified settings for MeetingMinder™ 1500i and MeetingMinder™ 1200i

Interactive Channel Players

Global Pin
- Set a global PIN to modify or adjust any reservations for a special or unexpected event.

Device Name
- Choose the device from the drop-down menu to configure interactive settings.

Description
- This is defined by the description you provided when you added the player or defined via the Channel Player Hardware screen.

Resolution
- The size of the player's desktop. This information is maintained in the Hardware screen and should always match the actual desktop resolution reported by the operating system.

Viewport
- The viewport is the area of the desktop that the media player will use to draw bulletins and tickers. When a media player is interactive, the viewport limits the size of the layouts, rather than the desktop. If you plan to use a stock image or custom graphic with your layout, you may need to adjust the following inputs to coordinate with your graphic.
  - Left: The offset, in pixels, from the left edge of the desktop.
  - Top: The offset, in pixels, from the top edge of the desktop.
  - Width: The width, in pixels, of the viewport.
  - Height: The height, in pixels, of the viewport.

Kiosk Theme
- Select the Default theme.

10.4.3 If integrating with Dean Evans EMS:

Select the Building, Room, Confirm Status and Cancel Status information you wish to display from the event data you have already configured under Configure | Event Schedule | Dean Evans Adapter
10.4.4 If integrating with Exchange Server:

Select the Calendar URL you wish to display from the event data you have already configured under Configure | Event Schedule | Exchange Server Adapter.

10.4.5 Create the Interactive MeetingMinder™ Layout

To configure the recommended layout for your MeetingMinder™ interactive room sign, go to Configure | Channel Player |. Select the interactive MeetingMinder™ hardware that you want to create a layout for from the drop-down menu next to “Channel Players” and click the Add Custom Layouts button.

Note: If you do not have the option to add a layout via the web browser interface, you will need to install the AxisTV Layout Editor located under System Tools | Install Layout Editor.

If you encounter difficulty downloading or installing the Layout Editor, please contact your AxisTV administrator or your Network/IT administrator.
Add Custom Layouts will open a new screen that allows you to add, edit or modify existing layouts.

- Select the Interactive MeetingMinder™ from the drop-down list next to Channel Player
- Click Create
- A new pop-up window will open
  - Provide a name for your new layout in the line provided
  - Click OK
- You will return to the create layouts screen
- Click the Edit button
- You will now have the ability to manage the Layout Properties

### Layout Properties

**Name**

You can change the display name of the layout at any time.

**Aspect ratio**

Choose the aspect ratio – changing the aspect ratio does not change the physical dimensions of the layout.

**Display resolution**

You can quickly change the dimensions of the layout with one of three options:

1. Match the current display resolution
2. Select from the drop-down list of popular / common resolutions
3. Enter a resolution manually

The dialog assumes you want to scale the content blocks, but you can disable scaling before clicking OK.
Content Blocks

Each defined content block is represented in this list. P blocks are playlists, T blocks are tickers.

Each block's placement is in pixels.

Note: VFO (video feed overlays), and DTO (Floating Date and Time overlays) are not compatible with the MeetingMinder™ interactive room signs.

- The Interactive MeetingMinder is designed for playback of 1 content playlist inside a single content block.

- Click on the default P1 block using your mouse. You may edit the default playlist under the Summary Details, including deleting the block or modifying the number of pixels from the top, left, width and height of the content block manually or by clicking and dragging the block around to resize it.

- If licensed, Video Streaming Overlay may be used. However, audio playback requires speakers (not included with purchase of the interactive MeetingMinder, internal speakers or audio jacks can be added at the time of purchase

- You may add an additional content block for VSO by clicking on the + symbol above the layout creation window. This opens a new pop-up window. You will only see options for which you are licensed. Select Video Stream Overlay.

- When you use the add block tool, you should position the pointer in an area where a block can be added. Blocks cannot overlap one another. Your choices are constrained by licensing and what's already present in the layout. It is typically easier to add the block in approximately the correct location then fine tune it with the mouse or edit the coordinates manually.

Selected Block Details

- **Delete Block** - You can delete any and all blocks, one at a time.

- **Placement / Apply** - If you need to adjust the placement of a block manually, you can type in the coordinate and click Apply.

| Placement Values for MeetingMinder™ 1500i and MeetingMinder™ 1200i |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Selected Block or Overlay Details | Delete Block | Placement (x,y,w,h) | 1,738,509 |
| Plays: | 1 - Play List 1 |
| Ticker: | 1 - Ticker 1 |
• **Playlist** - Content blocks can display either playlists or tickers. The list of available playlists is already limited to the playlists on the same play mode as the layout.

• **Ticker** – Not recommended for use on the Interactive MeetingMinder. Content blocks can display either playlists or tickers. The list of available tickers is already limited to the tickers on the same play mode as the layout.

• **Preview** - The preview thumbnail demarks the content blocks using the same designations as the Content Blocks section, so you can easily match details to the visual representation.

### 10.4.6 Interactivity via the Touchscreen Display

Meetings can be created, modified and deleted interactively by touching the screen.

#### 10.4.6.1 Overview

The Room availability sign is displayed below the EVENT DETAILS on the MeetingMinder™ with three possible states:

- Room Available
- Room Unavailable
- Room Reserved

The room availability sign is highlighted in green or red, depending on the availability of the room. When the room is available, then the “Room Available” sign is highlighted in green. The user may make a reservation by clicking “Reserve” or the “Room Available” button.

#### 10.4.6.2 Interactive Timeline

A timeline is displayed in the bottom section of the interactive application.

The timeline shows the current date, and a graphical representation of the room’s schedule, based on time. The timeline is interactive, allowing time slots (indicated by yellow or orange) to be touched for more information that will be displayed in the Event Details section, allowing the users to take actions based on the information.

The user can scroll on the timeline by scrolling on the area of the timeline that displays the time in hours, or by scrolling on the area of the timeline that displays the current date.

#### 10.4.6.3 Corporate Logo

The bottom left corner of the interactive MeetingMinder™ is designed to display a company logo in GIF file format with a transparent background. The Visix logo is the default logo displayed in the bottom left corner.

The user is able to change the logo by saving the new logo as “company_logo.png” in the C:\Program Files\Visix\AxisTV Channel Player\Graphics directory on the content manager.
10.4.6.4 Interactive Room Reservations

Room reservations are created via the MeetingMinder™ interactive touchscreen:

- Select the desired date and time on the timeline
- Click RESERVE
- Enter PIN number, if required (the PIN is enabled from the kiosk.exe.config file)
- Click CONFIRM
- Enter Start Time hour by highlighting the HRS and clicking +/- buttons
- Enter Start Time minutes by highlighting the MINUTES section and clicking +/- buttons
  
  *Start Time may not be in the past or conflict with other meetings.*

- Enter the End Time by highlighting the HRS and clicking +/- buttons
- Enter the End Time minutes by highlighting the MINUTES section and clicking +/- buttons
  
  *End Time should always be after Start Time.*

  Otherwise, an error stating “Start Time is not before End Time” will appear.

- Click CONFIRM
- The meeting will be viewable on the timeline

10.4.6.5 Interactive Room Modifications

Meetings that were created via the MeetingMinder™ interactive touchscreen may be modified by the user that created the meeting. Modifications to meetings are viewable on the content manager, as well as the MeetingMinder™ display.

Administrators with a global PIN have access to all available meetings that are created via the MeetingMinder™ interactive touchscreen.

- Select a meeting that was created at the MeetingMinder™ room sign using the interactive timeline. If the reservation is not visible in the current view, touch the forward arrow next to the date and/or timeline to find the reservation you want to modify. When you touch the reservation on the timeline, the Room Reserved is highlighted in red and the RESERVE button is disabled.
- Touch the Modify Meeting option. Enter PIN (if required) and touch the Confirm option.
- To modify the room reservation Start Time, Highlight the HRS and touch the +/- buttons to adjust the time.
  
  *Start Time may not be in the past or conflict with other meetings*

  *If the PIN entered is not valid, then an error message indicating ‘PIN does not match’ is displayed in red on the left panel.*

- To modify the room reservation End Time: Highlight the HRS and touch the +/- buttons to adjust the time.
  
  *End Time should always be after the Start Time.*

  *Otherwise, an error saying ‘Start Time is not before End Time” is displayed.*

- Touch Confirm to save modifications.
10.4.6.6 Interactive Room Cancellations

Meetings that were created via the MeetingMinder™ interactive touchscreen may be cancelled by the user that created the meeting. Meeting cancellations are viewable on the content manager, as well as the MeetingMinder™ display.

Administrators with a global PIN have access to all available meetings that are created via the MeetingMinder™ interactive touchscreen.

- Select a meeting that was created at the MeetingMinder™ room sign using the interactive timeline. If the reservation is not visible in the current view, touch the forward arrow next to the date and/or timeline to find the reservation you want to delete. When you touch the reservation on the timeline, the Room Reserved is highlighted in red and the RESERVE button is disabled.

- Touch END MEETING.

- Enter your pin number and then touch Confirm/Delete option.

  *If the PIN entered is not valid, then an error message indicating ‘PIN does not match’ is displayed in red on the left panel.*

10.4.6.7 Troubleshooting Tips

If you receive the message “Initialization failed” under the End Meeting button when the MeetingMinder™ is launched, confirm the values in Section 3 of the kiosk.exe.config file.

If you receive the following error message, it is likely due to the MeetingMinder™ not being recognized on the network. Consult your network administrator for assistance.

An AxisTV internal error has been reported. This page may not behave correctly because of the error. To view technical detail about the error, please click the information link at the top of the page.

**Error Details**

The following list details all the errors that have been recorded during your session. The most recent errors are at the top of the list.

```csharp
System.Exception: The channel player axistar5005Z219 did not response in a timely manner. Make sure it is playing.
at TelWeb.AddDisplay finished. Click(Object sender, EventArgs ea)
```

When your new player hardware is successfully added, you will be returned to the Channel Player Hardware menu, and the device you have added will be visible.

Confirm the information is correct, select the **Interactive** check box and click the **Change** button.
11 Feature Configuration Guide

Most of the features are configured by following this general sequence
- Enable license, if applicable
- Set operating system and network parameters, if applicable
- Configure the application-level behavior using Web User Interface, if applicable

11.1 Video Window

11.1.1 Installing the Card and Drivers on the Channel Player (does not apply to the tuner card)

AxisTV systems shipped from the factory with the Video Window Option (VWO) have all drivers loaded.

**Warning:** Only use drivers supplied by Visix, do not download drivers from anywhere else for use with the Video Window Card

The drivers for the Video Capture card are included with the AxisTV Channel Player.

You only need to perform this section if your Channel Player is being rebuilt or you are adding the video window option.

1. Shut down the player and physically install the Hauppauge ImpactVCB video card in an available PCI slot in the player.

2. Power on the player and when prompted, point to the drivers located in the Channel Player in the AxisTV drivers directory:
   - C:\Program Files\Visix\Drivers and Utilities\Hauppauge ImpactVCB 5.9C

3. Reboot the Channel Player

4. To verify installation of the drivers if you are not prompted for the driver installation, proceed to Device Manager (Start->Settings->Control Panel->System->Hardware Tab->Device Manager Button

5. Look under the Sound, Video, and Game Controllers category.
   - Hauppauge WinTV 878/9 WDM Video Driver
   - Hauppauge WinTV 878/9 WDM Aux Driver

6. Reboot the Channel Player

7. Connect live video source to ImpactVCB card (only one video source permitted with AxisTV)
   a. If using S-Video source, connect to S-Video jack
   b. If using composite video source, connect to middle RCA jack
11.1.2 Enabling the VWO Option with the standard Hauppauge Impact VCB Video Card

*For clients using v.7.0.x – v.7.0.9

From the Content Manager/Server: Run Start | Programs | Visix | Configure Device
a. On the Configure tab, click Change | Display Hardware
b. Highlight the AxisTV Channel Player name in the list
c. In the Video Window Card field, select ImpactVCB
d. Click Change
e. Acknowledge change and close utility

*For clients using v.7.0.12 and higher

In the Web User interface, go to Configure Channel Players | Hardware
Select Video Capture Card under Video Window Type for each Channel Player that has the Hauppauge Impact VCB card.

11.1.3 Enabling the VWO Option with Tuner Card

*For clients using v.7.0.x – v.7.0.9. If you are using v.7.0.12 and higher, please see Section 11.1.5

1. Run Start | Programs | Visix | Configure Device
a. On the Configure tab, click Change | Display Hardware
b. Highlight the AxisTV Player machine name in the list
c. In the Video Window Card field, select Tuner Card
d. Click Change
e. Acknowledge change and close utility

2. The Video Window Option is now ready to use. To test, go to Now Playing | Video Feeds
Select the Player from the list
a. Make sure Video Window Enabled is checked
b. Click Add Program
c. Schedule a test Video Program to play forever
d. The video window will open and play the live video feed within a couple of minutes on the player.
e. When adding a program from the Now Playing | Video Window screen to a player that has a tuner card, The Tuning Space field should be set to ATSC(digital), Antenna, Cable or Auxiliary. If ATSC is selected, then a channel, physical channel and minor channel are required while all other tuning spaces require only the channel number.

11.1.4 Configuring the location of the video window on the screen

*For clients using v.7.0.x – v.7.0.9. If you are using v.7.0.12 and higher, please see Section 13 Configuring the Screen Layout.

1. Once the licensing has been activated, log into the AxisTV web interface and go to Configure | Channel Player | Current Settings (v7.0.x)
a. Select the Player from the list
b. Expand the Mode section
c. In the “Video Window” section, enable “Video Window”, select the source type, and set the video window parameters
d. Click Update
2. The Video Window Option is now ready to use. To test, go to Now Playing | Video Feeds
Select the Player from the list
a. Make sure Video Window Enabled is checked
b. Click Add Program
c. Schedule a test Video Program to play forever
d. The video window will open and play the live video feed within a couple of minutes on the player.
e. When adding a program from the Now Playing | Video Window screen to a player that has a tuner card, The Tuning Space field should be set to ATSC(digital), Antenna, Cable or Auxiliary. If ATSC is selected, then a channel, physical channel and minor channel are required while all other tuning spaces require only the channel number.
11.1.5 Configuring the Tuner Card

*This feature is available for v.7.0.12 and higher*

Visix supports two classes of tuner cards. Instructions below are for the Hauppauge WinTV-PVR-150 Low Profile Card, which became available in Channel Players that shipped with version 7.0.12 or higher installed. This card is considered a “Type L” card in AxisTV. If you are using a different type of tuner card, please contact Visix for assistance.

To configure the tuner card and test video output, you must complete the following steps:

1. Generate Tuner Card Settings File
2. Configure Channel Player in content manager
3. Configure Tuner Card in content manager
4. Schedule Video Feeds for Tuner Card

The Tuner Card feature supports specific settings for each tuner card, which must be captured and applied to the Content Manager/Server. If a set of Channel Players all use the same make and model of tuner card then they can share the same settings. The settings file is a text file with an extension ending in .xml.

11.1.5.1 Generate Tuner Card Settings File

To generate the settings file, login to the Channel Player’s console (via Remote Desktop or connecting a display, mouse and keyboard directly into the Channel Player).

A new console menu option appears in 7.0.12, called ‘tuner’. This option will launch the selector utility. You can launch the selector by using the mouse or the keyboard shortcut ‘t’.

The selector will display all the tuner cards found in the system and allow you to select one card, test it and generate the configuration settings for that card.

Once you are satisfied with the results of the testing you can export the configuration settings so that the content manager can grab them or you can export them to a custom location for reuse or editing.
11.1.5.2 Configure Channel Player in Content Manager

Once you have created or been given the Tuner Card (Type L) settings file you must configure it in the content manager. Start by selecting Type L in the new Video Window Type in the **Configure | Channel Players | Hardware** screen.

![Video Window Type](image)

11.1.5.3 Configure Tuner Card in Content Manager

Go to **Configure | Channel Players | Tuner Cards**. This screen will list players that have been identified for Type L tuners in the Hardware screen – so you must configure the player in the hardware screen first (above). This screen allows you to import the settings file directly from the Channel Player, or upload it using your web browser. You can upload settings to multiple Channel Player and copy settings from one channel player to others.

![Tuner Card (Type L) Settings](image)

11.1.5.4 To Schedule a Video Feed

Go to **Now Playing | Video Feeds**. If the Type L tuner card has been configured, this screen offers video feed settings specific to the tuner card, based on the settings imported from the XML file.

Select **Tune as Cable or Antenna**.

Select the input from the **Using Input** dropdown list. If using the Video Tuner, select the channel in the **on channel** field.

![Tuner Card (Type L) Settings: Hauppauge WinTV PVR PCI II Capture](image)
11.2 **AxisTV Desktop**

*AxisTV Desktop is available for customers using v.7.0.18 and higher. If you are using a previous version of AxisTV, please skip to the next section.*

**Important Note:** All previous Clients (Layout Editor, Free Form Editor and Media Importer) must be uninstalled from Content Manager and each Client’s PC.

AxisTV Desktop replaces three previous AxisTV applications: AxisTV Layout Editor, AxisTV Media Importer, and AxisTV Free Form Editor, and combines them into one application, which may be installed onto the Content Manager or individual users’ computers. The AxisTV Desktop also includes a new feature called ‘Template Editor’ that allows users to create a Template that may be accessed through the AxisTV web interface to create a bulletin.

- The AxisTV Desktop installer must be downloaded from the link under System Tools | Install AxisTV Desktop in the web interface. Please refer to Section 15 for detailed instructions on how to download, install and launch the application,

- To launch the AxisTV Desktop application on a user’s PC, go to the Start menu, select All Programs, and select the Visix folder. Click to launch the AxisTV Desktop application. Users may also right click on the application to pin the item to their start menu or create a shortcut for easy access in the future.

- Only AxisTV Administrators have access to all AxisTV Desktop features. The features a user may access will depend on their assigned role (group of privileges) in AxisTV. *For more information, please refer to Section 15 of the User Guide, Configure | Security | Users and Configure | Security | Users | Roles.*

- The first time the AxisTV Desktop is launched; you will enter the Web Address of the Content Manager and click ‘Next’. This is typically the name of the Content Manager or an IP address. Contact your AxisTV or Network Administrator if you are unsure.

  - If you are using a proxy server to connect to the Content Manager, a checkbox has been provided for the use of a Proxy Server. When checked, the ‘Edit Proxy Settings’ button will appear. When clicked, a data form entry Dialog will appear and settings can be entered and saved here.

- Enter your AxisTV username and password when prompted and click OK.

  *Note: The user credentials only need to be entered once. AxisTV Desktop will remember user credentials the next time it is launched. In the event that the server name or IP address has changed, you can click on the ‘Connect to AxisTV’ button to enter new server and/or credential information.*
The AxisTV Desktop toolbar features an easy-to-use toolbar. The following buttons are available (from left to right in the image below left):

*Connect to AxisTV, Exit, Jump to Free Form Editor, Jump to Template Editor, Jump to Display Layout Editor, Jump to Media Importer and Visix User Forum*

The Visix User Forum button will take you to the Visix User Forum website when clicked for quick and easy access to the latest user manuals, quick-start guides, and tips and tricks from other AxisTV users.

AxisTV Desktop contains four application tabs:

- AxisTV Free Form Editor Tab
- AxisTV Template Editor
- AxisTV Display Layout Editor
- AxisTV Media Importer

**Important Note:** The image shown to the right shows the AxisTV Desktop view logged in with System Administrator credentials. What a user is able to see and access will depend solely on the privileges assigned to their AxisTV account as specified by their AxisTV Administrator.

The AxisTV Free Form Editor Tab is automatically selected by default when the AxisTV Desktop is launched. To access another application tab, simply click on the tab.

### 11.2.1 AxisTV Free Form Editor Tab

The AxisTV Free Form Editor allows a user to create new bulletins utilizing any combination of text and compatible graphic files.

Users may also create new bulletins from existing bulletins and rearrange the contents of the bulletin dragging the elements around with the mouse.

The user role determines whether or not a user may access this tool. Please refer to Configure | Security | Roles for more information.

Please refer to Section 14, AxisTV User Guide, Running Free Form Editor, for detailed instructions on how to create and schedule bulletins using the Free Form Editor Tab.
11.2.2 **AxisTV Template Editor Tab**

The AxisTV Desktop Template Editor is a new feature that allows the ability to create a bulletin with set fields for text or media insertion. It also allows for the ability to 'lock' portions of the bulletin that cannot be changed nor accessed by the user. The sections for naming the Template, choosing the background, choosing an audio background file and aspect ratio are the same as in the Free Form Editor.

Advanced planning is needed for the creation of a template that will comprise the following:

- What items are needed for the completion of the bulletin on the user side?
- What items should be 'locked' and made inaccessible?
- What sections (Text/Images) cannot be changed by user and can therefore be locked?
- Who will be able to use this template to create new bulletins?
- Have you given enough space for text entry in the unlocked section?

**Lock Property**

The Lock Property section is assessable once the Create Template or Edit Existing Template buttons are selected, allowing the Template Creator to lock one or all features listed. When a property is checked, an AxisTV user with the ability to create bulletins from a template will not be able to alter that property.

**User Security**

After determining which properties a user may access (in both the Lock Property Section and under Section Properties), you can apply the template settings to all users or specific users that have the ability to create a bulletin from a template.

If you choose “Selected Users”, a window will open that enables you to move usernames into the included or excluded column. Users who have the 'Create Custom Templates' privilege cannot be excluded and are therefore not shown. Click ‘OK’ when finished.
The Section Properties group box includes the ability to lock an entire section from being edited.

11.2.3 AxisTV Display Layout Editor Tab

The Display Layout Editor allows a user to create copy, modify and delete layouts for Channel Players. Please refer to the Section 11, Feature Configuration Guide, AxisTV Display Layout Editor for detailed instructions on how to create and modify screen layouts.

11.2.4 AxisTV Media Importer Tab

The AxisTV Media Importer allows a user to select multiple media files that are compatible with AxisTV and import the files in a single batch. A total of 1.99 Gigabytes is accepted per import.

AxisTV stores the files in the appropriate folder on the Content Manager, which users may access via the web interface under Manage | Graphic Files, Manage Audio Files, Manage Video Files, and Manage Background Library, based on the file type and whether the file was designated as a wallpaper or not.

Please refer Section 11, Feature Configuration Guide, AxisTV Media Importer for detailed instructions on uploading graphics, audio and video files to the Content Manager.
11.3 AxisTV Display Layout Editor

*Individual client applications may be utilized by customers using v.7.0.9 - v.7.0.17. If you are using an earlier version of 7.0.x, please skip to the next section. If you are using v.7.0.18 and higher, please refer to the AxisTV Desktop Feature Configuration instructions.

The Display Layout Editor is a WYSIWYG editor (What You See Is What You Get) that can create, copy, modify and delete layouts for Channel Players. You can access this editor from the web browser if you web server is configured to enable smart clients. You can also download and install the editor onto your PC using the System Tools | Install Layout Editor screen.

11.3.1 Configuring Connection

Before using the AxisTV Display Editor, you must configure the connection to the Content Manager/Server.

- Add the URL of your Content Manager/Server in the URL field. It is normally in the form http://server-name or http://ip-address
- Each time the editor is launched, the connection to the Content Manager/Server must be tested using the Test Connection… button
- Upon a successful connection test, the editor will allow the user to select, create, edit or copy layouts

If you are using a Proxy Server, please read the following instructions. If you do not use a Proxy Server, please skip to Test Connection (below):

- Default Proxy if there is a proxy server between the importer and the Content Manager/Server. Otherwise, please jump to “Test Connection” below. If you are unsure if you use a proxy server, please check with your IT Administrator
- Credentials – If using a proxy server, you can enter the credentials necessary to authenticate through the proxy server. These credentials aren’t always needed. Please check with your IT Administrator to specify both the default proxy usage as well instructions regarding credentials
- Continue to instructions for Test Connection (below)

Test Connection - When you click Test Connection, the Layout Editor attempts to communicate with the Content Manager/Server to verify the pathway is clear.

If the Layout Editor fails to verify connectivity to the Content Manager/Server an error dialog will appear with the underlying cause. This dialog can be used to save the error information for diagnosis by Visix.
11.4 AxisTV Media Importer

*Individual client applications may be utilized by customers using v.7.0.9 - v.7.0.17. If you are using an earlier version of 7.0.x, please skip to the next section. If you are using v.7.0.18 and higher, please refer to the AxisTV Desktop Feature Configuration instructions.

The AxisTV Media Importer replaces the old Large File Upload utility. The media importer is a .NET 2.0 native application that must be installed onto the client PC, it is a one-time install per PC.

11.4.1 Installation

The installer is deployed within the Web User Interface. Under System Tools select Install Media Importer. Then follow the instructions on the screen to download the software and save the setup.exe file to PC.

After the file has been saved, find setup.exe in its saved location and double click to run the installer. Accept the license agreement and follow the default steps through the installer.

When installation completes, you can immediately launch the media importer from the installer by selecting **Launch AxisTV Media Importer** and clicking **Finish**

or just click **Finish** if you do not want to use the importer right away.

The Media Importer can now be found under Start/All Programs/Visix
11.4.2 Configuring Connection

Before importing media into the AxisTV Content Manager/Server, you must configure the Media Importer’s connection to the Content Manager/Server. Add the URL of your Content Manager/Server in the URL field seen below:

Every time the Media Importer is launched, the connection to the Content Manager/Server must be tested using the Test Connection… button. The Media Importer saves connection information to the local PC in the user’s private storage area. This storage area is in a directory similar to: C:\Documents and Settings\username\Application Data\Visix\MediaImporter.

Only after the connection has been tested will the Media Importer allow the user to select and upload files.

The Change AxisTV Content Manager/Server Connection button can be used after selecting files to change which AxisTV Content Manager/Server the media importer is expecting or to change proxy or credentials.

The URL textbox must point to the root of the AxisTV Content Manager/Server’s Web UX. It will normally be in the form http://server-name or http://ip-address.

Use Default Proxy should be checked if there is a proxy between the importer and the Content Manager/Server.

The Credentials… button invokes a dialog that can store the credentials necessary to authenticate through the proxy server. These credentials aren’t always needed. The IT staff will have to specify both the default proxy usage as well as credentials.

When you click Test Connection… the media importer attempts to communicate with the Content Manager/Server to verify the pathway is clear.

If the media importer fails to verify connectivity to the Content Manager/Server an error dialog will appear with the underlying cause. This dialog can be used to save the error information for diagnosis by Visix.
11.4.3 Selecting Files

The Selected Media Files… button opens a standard file dialog that can be used to select multiple media files that are compatible with AxisTV. The dialog already knows all the allowed extensions and filters the available files based on those extensions.

All allowed file extensions can be found in the Web user interface online help (click the ? icon at the top right). The Selected Media Files… button can be used repeatedly to select files from different directories.

Once all the files have been selected the user must assign each a description and select a background aspect ratio if the file’s type is a still image and you want to use the image as a background.

The selected file list can grow beyond what is visible in the form. In that case, a scroll bar is provided.

You can elect to remove selected files from the list before starting the import, using the red delete button on the appropriate line(s).

11.4.4 Importing Files

The media importer imports all the selected files in a single batch. The import starts when you click the Import… button.

As the import is processing, a progress dialog is displayed. This dialog shows progress of the current file as well as of the total bytes that are to be imported.

You can use the Cancel button to stop the import, but cancel does not take effect immediately. The dialog will indicate that a cancel is pending, but continue importing the current file.

Once the current file has completely imported, you are given a confirmation dialog asking if you really wish to cancel.
11.5 FreeForm Enhancements

*Individual client applications may be utilized by customers using v.7.0.9 - v.7.0.17. If you are using an earlier version of 7.0.x, please skip to the next section. If you are using v.7.0.18 and higher, please refer to the AxisTV Desktop Feature Configuration instructions.

FreeForm has been split out as a downloadable stand-alone application that can be used in conjunction with the AxisTV Content Manager/Server. You can still get to the web-browser hosted FreeForm screen, but you now have to turn it on. The web-browser hosted FreeForm screen is turned off by default as of 7.0.

11.5.1 Enabling FreeForm in the Web Browser

By default, the FreeForm smart client is disabled in the web browser (Web User Interface). To enable it, you must edit the Web.Config file in the \Web directory. The value that must be edited is: `<add key="EnableSmartClient" value="false"/>`. This value must be changed from false to true: `<add key="EnableSmartClient" value="true"/>`.

If you enable the Web Browser hosted FreeForm smart client, you are still free to download and install the FreeForm client application onto their PCs. Both forms of the FreeForm can be used interchangeably in one installation.

11.5.2 FreeForm “Disabled” Notification Screen

The Web User Interface has a new screen that is displayed when you try to edit an existing FreeForm bulletin and the FreeForm screen is disabled in the browser. This notification screen can be displayed when the user selects a bulletin for editing from Now Playing | Play Lists, Manage | My Content and Schedule | My Content.

The text of this notification screen instructs you to download the FreeForm client or get assistance from an administrator.

11.5.3 Installing the FreeForm Editor

The FreeForm Editor can be downloaded and installed onto a client PC by using the System Tools | Install FreeForm Editor screen within the AxisTV Web User Interface.

When installation completes, you can immediately launch the FreeForm Editor from the installer.
11.5.4 Running FreeForm Editor (Big Picture)

The FreeForm Editor provides a host environment for the FreeForm smart client. In so doing, it must fully replace the environment normally provided by the Web Browser. In order to provide all information required by the smart client, the FreeForm Editor forces you through a 3-step process.

11.5.5 Step 1 - Configuring Connection

The FreeForm Editor must establish a connection to the Content Manager/Server and verify your rights.

Every time you launch the FreeForm Editor, the connection to the Content Manager/Server must be tested with the Test Connection… button. The connection information is saved to the local PC in your private storage area. This storage area is in a directory similar to: C:\Documents and Settings\username\Application Data\Visix\FreeFormEditor.

The URL textbox must point to the root of the AxisTV Content Manager/Server’s Web UX. It will normally be in the form http://server-name or https://ip-address.

Use Default Proxy should be checked if there is a proxy between the editor and the Content Manager/Server. The Credentials… button invokes a dialog that can store the credentials necessary to authenticate through the proxy server. These credentials aren’t always needed. The IT staff will have to specify both the default proxy usage and the credentials, if required.

Test Connection… opens a dialog that perform the test. The connection must be tested using the AxisTV User ID and AxisTV Password. The AxisTV user is needed by the smart client when saving the messages.
11.5.6  Step 2 – Create or Edit Message

Once connected to the Content Manager/Server, you can create new messages or edit existing ones.

Create Message displays the smart client in create mode, while Edit Existing Message... first displays a dialog in which the user can select an existing FreeForm bulletin.

11.6  Step 3 – Save or Cancel

When the messages have been created or edited, you can either save their work or discard all changes.

Cancel Operation validates your desire, in case of an accidental click. Save Message saves the new or existing messages, then offers a shortcut to the Schedule Bulletin web page that can be used to add a schedule to the new or existing messages.

11.6.1  FreeForm Editor and ActiveDirectory Integration

The FreeForm Editor that can be installed onto a client PC does not support the AxisTV ActiveDirectory Integration option. If you wish to use AD Integration, you must use the smart client inside the Web Browser User Interface. This means you must ensure .NET security will be granted to all users.
11.7 Delayed Distribution

Delayed Distribution that is available only with the Enterprise license. It enables operating system and network administrators to delay distribution of content to Channel Players in order to spread load across the network or time. This can help reduce network saturation when large media are scheduled for playback.

11.8 Desktop Messenger

Send AxisTV bulletins as instant messages to any and all licensed PCs.

11.8.1 Install Desktop Messenger on each PC

Go to System Tools and select Desktop Messenger

Right Click on Install AxisTV Desktop Messenger Client Installer

Choose Save As/Download from your browser pop-up menu to save the installation program on your C: drive.

Once the installer has been downloaded, run it to install the AxisTV Desktop Messenger client program.

When the InstallShield Wizard is complete click on the Launch AxisTV Desktop Messenger then click on Finish.

You will find the AxisTV Desktop Messenger icon on your desktop toolbar. To configure the toolbar, right click on the icon and select Configure.

Enter the URL of your publisher server followed by /DesktopPublisher/DesktopGateway.asmx. Click Test. If using a proxy server, enter proxy information.

Click Add/Change to subscribe to a distribution list. Some distribution lists are password protected. If so, user must enter the password to subscribe.
11.8.2 Message Storage and Appearance Options

Days in History, indicates the number of days the Desktop Messenger will store a message for viewing. You can click through past messages stored in history by clicking the forward and back arrow buttons on the top right of the window.

Click the magnifying glass to view full screen

Transparency

The Desktop Messenger supports transparency and several popup sizes. Preferences for these options can be set on the Configuration screen.

11.8.2.1 No Messages

When there are no messages in history, the following stock message appears.

11.8.3 Configure Publishers from the Content Manager/Server

Desktop Messenger can support multiple distribution lists. Based on the needs of the client, multiple publishers can be setup on different servers to spread out the network load. Desktop Messenger is licensed by client count. All publishers reserve a portion of the client count. The total of all publishers reserved count cannot exceed the license count. Publishers should be installed onto PCs or servers to maximize throughput through the network.
**11.8.3.1 Publish Messages**

A Desktop Message is a bulletin that excludes video sections. If an installation is licensed for Desktop Messenger and the user has the ‘Create Desktop Message’ privilege, the schedule screen includes the Desktop Messenger. The user can schedule the bulletin to both Playlists and the Desktop Messenger, or ‘Skip Playlists!’ in order to schedule exclusively to the Desktop Messenger (and Text Messenger as shown here).

Once the bulletin has been published to the Play List(s) or the play lists have been skipped the publish schedule screen appears. The schedule attributes are different than for Playlists. A message can be scheduled for one-time publishing or recurring publishing. There is no notion of a list of items that play over and over. Scheduling is not real-time. It can take several minutes from the time that a message becomes eligible for publishing to the Desktop Messenger until it is actually delivered. This is due to the multi-tier distribution model.

**11.8.4 Now Playing**

Now Playing has been enhanced for users with the ‘Create Desktop Message’ privilege. The new screen ‘Publishers’ will automatically appear in the menu tree. The screen is intentionally similar to Now Playing Play Lists, offering the user the opportunity to change or remove the message from the schedule or to edit the underlying bulletin (using the same rules as Now Playing Play Lists).
11.8.5  Message Distribution

The Desktop Messenger distributes messages through two tiers. The Desktop Distributor must reside on the Content Manager/Server and distributes messages to all of the configured Desktop Publishers. Each Publisher, in turn, is responsible for distributing messages to all the subscribing Messengers.

11.8.5.1 Deployment Scenario 1

For many installations, such as small customers, both tiers can be deployed on a single server.

11.8.5.2 Deployment Scenario 2

For larger customers or customers with network constraints, the Publishers can be spread out on separate servers in addition to the Content Manager/Server.

11.8.5.3 Deployment Scenario 3

For Enterprise customers or customers with network or Content Manager/Server constraints, all Publishers can be deployed on separate servers, excluding the Content Manager/Server. A Content Manager/Server constraint, in this scenario, means that the Content Manager/Server is being fully utilized (many plug-ins and adapters are licensed and running)
11.8.6 Configuring Distribution

Each server that functions as a Desktop Distributor or a Desktop Publisher can be configured via a straightforward XML (text) file. This new XML file will become the standard for system-level configuration of future features and services within AxisTV.

11.8.6.1 Tei.Settings.xml

This file is contained within the same directory as the server executable files. Below are the portions of the file that control Desktop Message distribution.

11.8.6.2 <DesktopMessageDistributor> Options

These options control the system-level behavior of the Desktop Distributor.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>Controls whether this service executes. Any value but “true” means “false”. Rather than running all services all the time, the new architecture supports selective execution. run should be set to “false” unless the Desktop Messenger is licensed, otherwise the service will log an error and terminate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>runDelay</td>
<td>The number of seconds to wait after the server boots before starting this service. This gives the administrator control over the time lag for Network and Database services to start in Windows® XP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>networkChunkSizeInKb</td>
<td>The maximum single blob to copy across the network. Normally 100Kb renders the fastest distribution.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idleBeginTime</td>
<td>The time each day that the distribution service should become dormant. This is useful for customers that don’t want messages delivered during backups or other critical network usage. To disable the daily idle time simply make idleBeginTime and idleEndTime the same time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idleEndTime</td>
<td>The time each day that the distribution service becomes active. See ‘idleBeginTime’ for more information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 11.8.6.2.1 `<DesktopMessagePublisher>` Options

These options control the system-level behavior of the Desktop Distributor.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>Controls whether this service executes. Any value but “true” means “false”. Rather than running all services all the time, the new architecture supports selective execution. Desktop Publishers do not evaluate licensing – that burden is placed on the Desktop Distributor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>runDelay</td>
<td>The number of seconds to wait after the server boots before starting this service. This gives the administrator control over the time lag for Network and Database services to start in Windows® XP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>networkChunkSizeInKb</td>
<td>The maximum single blob to copy across the network. Normally 100Kb renders the fastest distribution.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>workerThreadCount</td>
<td>The number of threads of execution to spawn when a message must be pushed to Desktop Messengers. Network and System Administrators can control the speed of distribution and load on the server and network by manipulating the networkChunkSizeInKb and workerThreadCount values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broadcastPort</td>
<td>The UDP port on which the publisher advertises for Desktop Messengers. (the Find feature of the Desktop Messenger)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>listenerPort</td>
<td>The TCP port on which the publisher listens for content pushed down from the Desktop Distributor and for subscription requests from Desktop Messengers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idleBeginTime</td>
<td>The time each day that the distribution service should become dormant. This is useful for customers that don’t want messages delivered during backups or other critical network usage. To disable the daily idle time simply make idleBeginTime and idleEndTime the same time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idleEndTime</td>
<td>The time each day that the distribution service becomes active. See ‘idleBeginTime’ for more information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contentKey</td>
<td>The AxisTV Content Installation key that the publisher will accept. This installation key must match the installation key originating the Desktop Messages, or they are rejected.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
11.9 Screen Saver

11.9.1 Configure the screen saver plug-in on the Content Manager/Server

- Go to Configure on the Tree Menu of the web interface then select Screen Saver plug-in

- Enter Regeneration Interval and Minimum poll interval. Default is 15 minutes.

The Screen Saver plug-in generates non-video images or all Public Playlists. It generates images based on the Regeneration Interval you specify. This interval, in minutes, dictates how long to wait when checking for changes to bulletins.

Each Screen Saver Client must obtain images from the Screen Saver plug-in. You can control how often the client poll for updates by specifying a minimum poll interval. This interval, in minutes, dictates how long to wait when checking for changes to images.

Note that the client polling and the plug-in regeneration run independently of one another. This means that any bulletin changed could take up to Regeneration Interval + Minimum Poll Interval to make its way down to the client.

- The total number of clients allowed to access the Screen Saver plug-in is documented for you. To increase this number you must purchase additional Screen Saver Client Licenses and register them.

- Select Yes on Automatically Add Clients if you want individual PCs to be added when the plug-in is installed and configured on the Client PC. A client is registered (and consumes an available license) the first time it connects to the Screen Saver plug-in. If you select "No" you will have to manually register the clients with the Add Clients control on the screen.

- To manually add clients, enter the client name in the Add Clients field and click Add. Use the Windows® Computer Name of the client, not the network or DNS name or IP address.

- You can remove registered clients by selecting the computer name from the dropdown list under Remove Clients.

- When finished click on Update Service to apply changes to the Screen Saver plug-in configuration.
11.9.2 Install Screen Saver Client on PC

- Go to System Tools | Install Screen Saver
- **Right** click Installer link and choose Save As/Download from your browser pop-up menu to save the installation program on your C: drive.
- Locate the setup.exe file on your C: drive and double click to Run the installer.
- Accept the EULA
- Enter customer Information
- Set up type is Complete
- Click on Install
- Click on Finish
- Right Click on your desktop and select Properties
- Click on the Screen Saver tab
- Select AxisTV
  - Click on Settings
  - On the Axis TV Server tab enter the Network Name or IP address of the Content Manager/Server
  - The Default Port for Screen Saver is 6104.
  - On the Playlist tab select the AxisTV playlist you wish to display on the screen saver.
  - Note that the playlist must be marked as Public in order to be available as a screen saver. To make a playlist Public, go to Configure|Content Settings|Playlist and select “Yes” if the public field on the playlist you wish to make public
  - Click on the Screen tab to specify the appearance of the screen saver on the screen. You can choose the images to play full screen with no movement or you can select move images around the screen to have the images float around the screen and the speed.
11.10 Text Messenger

The Text Messenger feature allows AxisTV users to publish text messages to cell phones via the Omnilert SMS gateway. The Text Messenger and its recipients must be configured to work with the Omnilert SMS gateway. **Important Note:** Version 3 of the E2Campus product has eliminated the API that allows third parties, like Visix, to send messages to the e2Campus system. For our customers that use AxisTV text messenger functionality for sending messages from Visix to e2Campus, an upgrade to version 3 of the e2Campus software will disable the functionality. At this point e2Campus has no plans to re-enable this feature. Customers that have specific questions regarding the e2Campus changes in version 3, should contact their e2Campus representative.

11.10.1.1 Configuration

**Omnilert Account**

The customer must setup an Omnilert account, complete with a valid Short Code. Omnilert provides the proper URL, Account ID and Channel ID.

11.10.1.2 Distribution Lists

AxisTV bundles recipients into distribution lists. The customer can establish as many lists as they wish.

11.10.1.3 Recipients

Each cell phone that the customer wishes to include must be specified as a recipient. The MSISDN is the globally unique cell phone number and should include the leading ‘1’ for U.S. based phones.

11.10.1.4 Publish Messages

A Text Message is a bulletin that contains at least 1 text section. If an installation is licensed for Text Messenger and the user has the ‘Create Text Message’ privilege, the schedule screen includes the Text Messenger. The user can schedule the bulletin to both Playlists and the Text Messenger, or ‘Skip Playlists!’ in order to schedule exclusively to the Text Messenger (and Desktop Messenger as shown here).

Once the bulletin has been published to the Play List(s) or the play lists have been skipped the publish schedule screen appears. The schedule attributes are different than for Playlists. A message can be scheduled for one-time publishing or recurring publishing. There is no notion of a list of items that play over and over. Scheduling is not real-time. All messages must be given to the Omnilert gateway, then distributed to the cell phone service providers.
11.10.2 Configuring Distribution

The Content Manager/Server functions as a Text Messenger. It can be configured via a straightforward XML (text) file. This new XML file will become the standard for system-level configuration of future features and services within AxisTV.

11.10.2.1 Tei.Settings.xml

This file is contained within the same directory as the server executable files. Below are the portions of the file that control Text Message distribution.

```xml
<Publishers>

  <TextMessenger
    run="false"
    runDelay="60"
    idleBeginTime="09:00:00 PM"
    idleEndTime="05:00:00 AM"
    httpTimeoutInSeconds="10" />

11.10.2.2 <TextMessenger> Options

These options control the system-level behavior of the Text Messenger.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>Controls whether this service executes. Any value but “true” means “false”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>runDelay</td>
<td>The number of seconds to wait after the server boots before starting this</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>service. This gives the administrator control over the time lag for Network</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and Database services to start in Windows® XP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idleBeginTime</td>
<td>The time each day that the distribution service should become dormant. This</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>is useful for customers that don’t want messages delivered during backups or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>other critical network usage. To disable the daily idle time simply make</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>idleBeginTime and idleEndTime the same time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idleEndTime</td>
<td>The time each day that the distribution service becomes active. See ‘idleBeginTime’ for more information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>httpTimeoutInSeconds</td>
<td>The maximum number of seconds to wait when communicating with the Omnilelert SMS gateway.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```
11.11 RSS Publisher

The RSS Publisher is a new feature that can provide RSS Readers with play lists and their images. All ‘public view’ play lists are eligible for RSS Publishing. The RSS Publisher is licensed by the number of RSS Web Servers. During installation, you can choose to create an ‘RSS Web Site’ as a sub-selection of ‘Content Publishers’.

11.11.1 Configure Publishers

The Web configuration screen allows you to specify the RSS Web Sites. You can also specify how often content is refreshed to the RSS Web Sites. The RSS Readers will hit the sites and receive new content only after the sites themselves have been updated.

11.11.2 Content Distribution

The RSS Publisher distributes content through two tiers. Since all ‘public view’ content is eligible, the Public Publisher constitutes the first tier and is located on the Content Manager/Server. It distributes content to all RSS Publishers, which must reside on the same servers as their corresponding RSS Web Sites. RSS Readers simply poll the RSS Web Sites at their configured or on-demand interval.
11.11.2.1 Deployment Scenario 1

For many installations, such as small customers, both tiers can be deployed on a single server.

11.11.2.2 Deployment Scenario 2

For larger customers or customers with network constraints, the Publishers can be spread out on separate servers in addition to the Content Manager/Server.

11.11.2.3 Deployment Scenario 3

For Enterprise customers or customers with network or Content Manager/Server constraints, all Publishers can be deployed on separate servers, excluding the Content Manager/Server. A Content Manager/Server constraint, in this scenario, means that the Content Manager/Server is being fully utilized (many plug-ins and adapters are licensed and running).
11.11.3 Configuring Distribution

Each server that functions as a Public Publisher or a RSS Publisher can be configured via a straightforward XML (text) file. This new XML file will become the standard for system-level configuration of future features and services within AxisTV.

11.11.3.1 Tei.Settings.xml

This file is contained within the same directory as the server executable files. Below are the portions of the file that control RSS Publisher distribution.

```
<Publishers>

<PublicPublisher
    run="false"
    runDelay="60"
    networkChunkSizeInKb="100"
    idleBeginTime="09:00:00 PM"
    idleEndTime="05:00:00 AM" />

```

11.11.3.2 <PublicPublisher> Options

These options control the system-level behavior of the Public Publisher.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Run</td>
<td>Controls whether this service executes. Any value but “true” means “false”. Rather than running all services all the time, the new architecture supports selective execution. run should be set to “false” unless the RSS Publisher is licensed, otherwise the service will log an error and terminate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>runDelay</td>
<td>The number of seconds to wait after the server boots before starting this service. This gives the administrator control over the time lag for Network and Database services to start in Windows® XP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>networkChunkSizeInKb</td>
<td>The maximum single blob to copy across the network. Normally 100Kb renders the fastest distribution.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idleBeginTime</td>
<td>The time each day that the distribution service should become dormant. This is useful for customers that don’t want messages delivered during backups or other critical network usage. To disable the daily idle time simply make idleBeginTime and idleEndTime the same time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idleEndTime</td>
<td>The time each day that the distribution service becomes active. See ‘idleBeginTime’ for more information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
11.11.3.3 <RssPublisher> Options

These options control the system-level behavior of the RSS Publisher.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Run</td>
<td>Controls whether this service executes. Any value but “true” means “false”. Rather than running all services all the time, the new architecture supports selective execution. RSS Publishers do not evaluate licensing – that burden is placed on the Public Publisher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>runDelay</td>
<td>The number of seconds to wait after the server boots before starting this service. This gives the administrator control over the time lag for Network and Database services to start in Windows® XP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>listenerPort</td>
<td>The TCP port on which the publisher listens for content pushed down from the Public Publisher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>publishRoot</td>
<td>The root physical directory of the RSS Web Site. All content that the publisher receives will be placed in this directory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>siteURL</td>
<td>The client-accessible URL to the RSS Web Site. The publisher creates the reader files with internal references to this URL so that readers can pull down individual images.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.12 Flash® Playback

Flash® Playback is a new feature that is licensed on a per-player basis. Users can now import Flash® Movies (.swf files) and schedule them to play lists. However, the movies will only play on Channel Players that have been granted the license to do so.

11.12.1 Prerequisites

Every Channel Player that is to playback Flash® movies must have the following software installed:

- Adobe Flash® Player 8.0 (or higher) for Windows® and Internet Explorer®
- Microsoft® .Net Framework 1.1 or higher
11.12.2 Configuration (This step is not required in versions 7.0.21 and higher)

11.12.2.1 Tei.Settings.xml

This file is contained within the same directory as the server executable files. Below are the portions of the file that control Flash® playback.

```
<Licensing>

  <FlashPlayers count="0">
    <FlashPlayer1 name="Channel Player DNS" />
    <FlashPlayer2 name="Channel Player DNS" />
  </FlashPlayers>

</Licensing>
```

11.12.2.2 <FlashPlayers> Options

These options control which Channel Players are authorized to play Flash® movies.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>count</td>
<td>Specifies the number of FlashPlayerX entries. This count cannot exceed the license count for Flash® Players. A count higher than the license allows will be ignored.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FlashPlayer1…N</td>
<td>Each Flash® player must be numbered, from 1 to the count.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>The Channel Player’s DNS. Must match the DNS known by the Content Manager/Server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.13 Login Page Logo Customization

The maximum logo size supported by the login page is 450 pixels wide by 240 pixels high. The logo block is located along the left edge of the page, 335 pixels down from the top of the page.
11.13.1 Logo Configuration

- Copy the desired logo file into the Logos directory
  - The Logos directory is located in the Web installation directory, which is typically C:\Program Files\Visix\AxisTV Content Services\Web *
  - The type of graphics files are limited to those supported by browsers (JPG, GIF, etc.)
- Register the new logo file name with the AxisTV Web application
  - Open the Web.config file with notepad or another text editor, which is located in the Web installation directory
  - Find the line that looks similar to: `<add key="CustomImageName" value="tei_color_128.gif"/>`
  - Edit the value="" portion and insert the name of the new logo file
- All logos are horizontally aligned to the middle of the logo section of the page, but their vertical alignment can be controlled
  - Open the Web.config file with notepad or another text editor, which is located in the Web installation directory
  - Find the line that looks similar to: `<add key="VAlignCustomImage" value="middle"/>`
  - Edit the value="" portion and insert one of the key words: top, middle or bottom

11.13.2 Menu Width Configuration

- Open the Web.config file with notepad or another text editor
  - The Web.config file is located in the Web installation directory, which is typically
  - C:\Program Files\Visix\AxisTV Content Services\Web
  - In systems that have been upgraded from previous versions of AxisTV, this file name may contain “TEi” instead of “Visix”. For example: C:\Program Files\TEi\AxisTV\License
  - Find the line that looks similar to: `<add key="NavigationPaneWidth" value="190"/>`
  - Edit the value="" portion and insert an integer that represents the width of the tree pane in pixels – the vertical divider bar will be drawn immediately to the right of the tree menu to make the separation clear

11.14 Configuring Web Viewer (Public Pages)

The Public (Slide Show) screen provides a way to view content generated by the AxisTV software for selected play lists by people who do not have AxisTV user accounts. It can also be used to embed the slide show in organizational Web sites and portals. The play lists must be marked as ‘public’ in their setup. The screen comes with standard navigation controls for Play, Stop, Next, Back, First and Last. The following table explains how to make a public image clickable (for navigation to another Web resource), the format of the URL and options in the Web.config file that can be configured to control the behavior of the slide show.
Configuration (Basic)

- Making Images Clickable (for navigation)
  
  - In order to provide navigation from a public image to another Web resource, the title of the bulletin must be formatted as a valid URL. This title can be in the form http://rest-of-url or https://rest-of-url.

- URL Format
  
  - http://host/public/playlistview.aspx?option=value&option=value...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Required</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>playlistNbr</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>This option is required and is numeric. It represents the play list number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mode</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>This option is required and is alphanumeric. It represents the play mode of the play list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>height</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>This option is required and is numeric. It represents the height in pixels of the slide show image (this doesn't include the title banner or navigation buttons). The aspect ratio of the image is preserved in all cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>installationLabel</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>This option is not required and if specified, must be a discreet value. It represents the relative font size of the title in the banner. The choices are: xx-small, x-small, small, smaller, medium, large, larger, x-large, xx-large</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banner</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>This option is not required and if specified, must be numeric and between 0 and 100 inclusively. It represents the percent of the banner's configured height to use. 0 hides the banner and 100 shows the banner at full height. When not specified, the default value of 100 is assumed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>navigation</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>This option is not required and if specified, must be numeric and between 0 and 100 inclusively. It represents the percent of the navigation button's configured height to use. 0 hides the navigation buttons and 100 shows them at full height (and width). When not specified, the default value of 100 is assumed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sample HTML Address with all options “ON”


11.14.1 Web.config file (Advanced)

The Web.config file in the Public directory offers configuration values that control basic behavior. The options specified on the URL further specialize the look and behavior.

Web.config BannerHeight value

- This is a numeric value in pixels and controls what 100 percent means with the URL banner option.

Web.config NavigationHeight value

- This is a numeric value in pixels and controls what 100 percent means with the URL navigation option.

Web.config PollInterval value

- This is a numeric value in milliseconds (1/1000 of a second) and determines how long each bulletin displayed before the next bulletin when the slide-show is in auto-play mode

Web.config TimeoutInterval value

- This is a numeric value in milliseconds (1/1000 of a second) and determines how long the user’s browser will wait for an image to be fetched from the server - bulletins that take longer than this interval are skipped

Web.config VerticalSpacing value

- This is a numeric value in pixels and controls the amount of vertical white space between the bottom of the slide image (bulletin) and the top of the navigation buttons (this value has meaning only if the navigation buttons are shown)

Web.config ErrorMessage value

- This is a text value that controls the error text displayed if an error occurs trying to retrieve an image. The default value is “Public play list is not available at this moment. Please try again shortly.”
11.15 Old Message Purge

Large implementations have to support hundreds of users manipulating messages across hundreds of playlists to hundreds of players. "Old" messages are very frequently created by changing content.

The AxisTV Content Purge Service that runs on the Content Manager/Server has been enhanced to automatically purge old messages, based on settings established in the Tei.Settings.xml file. Only Enterprise licensed systems support this automatic "old" message purge.

A new section has been added to Tei.Settings.xml for controlling the behavior of the purge. This new section is a direct subordinate of the <Services> section.

```
<Services>
  <EnterprisePurge
    run="false"
    maximumMessageAgeInDays="60" />
</Services>
```

11.15.1 Unpurgable Messages (Limitations)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>Controls whether the Enterprise &quot;Old&quot; Message purge executes when the AxisTV Content Purge Service starts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maximumMessageAgeInDays</td>
<td>The maximum number of days a message can stay in My Content AFTER it is removed from the playlists in Now Playing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some messages cannot be detected by the automatic "old" message purge.

- **Never Scheduled**
  
  If a user creates a new message but doesn't schedule it, it remains in My Content forever. The "old" message purge is based on the premise that the message has dropped off the schedule – and this is detected by finding out the last time it was known to be on the schedule.

- **Very Short Schedule**
  
  If a message is scheduled to play for a very short duration, it is possible that it will be added to the system, scheduled, played, then removed from the schedule between the AxisTV Content Purge Service' purge cycles. Messages like this look the same as "never scheduled" messages to the purge.
11.16 Mode Management

A key enhancement for large implementations is the ability to activate a specific mode on a set of players at once, rather than one player at a time.

A new screen has been added – it is accessed from the Configure | Channel Players | Group Mode menu. This menu option is visible only when the installation is licensed as an Enterprise installation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Player Group</th>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Activated Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All Players</td>
<td>Alert</td>
<td>Activate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headquarters</td>
<td>Alert</td>
<td>Activate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northeast Region</td>
<td>Alert</td>
<td>Activate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Every installation has a built-in group called “All Players” that can be used to activate a play mode on all players at once. In order to activate only some players, the customer must form groups by using the Configure | Channel Players | Groups screen.

The Group Mode screen does not show the currently activated mode on every group since the players within the group can have different active modes at the same time.

When you activate a new mode on a player group, the players within the group are all updated on the Content Manager/Server. The new mode will become effective on all the players when the updated ATD files are published to the players (within the next publishing cycle). The visual feedback upon successful activation is text in the Activated Mode column.

11.17 Player Vertical Scalability

Enterprise customers can now choose to deploy multiple Channel Player Publishers to support a very large number of Channel Players. This new approach is called “Multi-Tier Publishing” where more than one tier of distribution is used to spread the load across network segments as efficiently and quickly as possible.

11.17.1 Player Enterprise Publishers

A new publisher, the Player Enterprise Publisher, has been added to AxisTV and is accessible and configurable for Enterprise customers.
11.17.2 Components

Three new components have been added to enable multi-tier publication: Enterprise Distributor, Enterprise Publisher and the Consumer.

11.17.3 Enterprise Distributor

The Enterprise Distributor must sit on the Content Manager/Server, and executes inside the AxisTV Content Publishing Service, in place of the old content publisher. It pushes content to the Enterprise Publishers, based on the configuration established in the Web UX.

11.17.4 Enterprise Publisher

The Enterprise Publisher can reside on the Content Manager/Server, a separate server or PC or on a Channel Player. It accepts content from the Enterprise Distributor and makes that content available to players via an IIS virtual directory. The bulk of the transfer load, including simultaneously downloading, is handled by IIS and web download protocols. The Enterprise Publisher keeps itself clean of all old content.

11.17.5 Consumer

The Consumer is a new process on the Channel Player that can be configured to point to an Enterprise Publisher and download content automatically on a periodic basis. Whenever content has been changed it notifies the player that a content update has occurred. It periodically scans the Channel Player for old content (unreferenced) and purges it automatically.
11.17.6 Deployment Options

The Enterprise Publishers may be deployed in several ways.

The distributor and publisher can be installed on the Content Manager/Server. Since the goal is vertical scaling, though, this configuration won’t make sense for most installations.

A variant of the first option adds Enterprise Publishers to external servers, PCs or players.

This option will be appropriate for some installations.

For most large installations, though, the best deployment option is to install the Enterprise Publishers on servers, PCs or players other than the server or PC running the Content Manager/Server. This distributes the I/O load away from the Content Manager/Server, which may have to handle large numbers of simultaneous user transactions.
11.17.7 Installing the Enterprise Publisher

The Enterprise Publisher is bundled into the AxisTV Content Services installer. It is part of the Content Publishers feature. The Enterprise Player Publisher sub-feature controls whether IIS is prepared with a new virtual directory.

This installer must be run on all devices that will serve as Enterprise Publishers.

11.17.8 Configuring the Enterprise Publisher

Once the publisher is installed and IIS is configured by the installer, the publisher must be configured. For machines other than the Content Manager/Server, run Prepare Publishers. For Content Manager/Servers, run Initialize Device or Upgrade Device. Once the appropriate wizard has completed, edit the Tei.Settings.xml file. A new section has been added for controlling the behavior of the publisher.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>run</td>
<td>Controls whether the publisher executes when the service starts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>runDelay</td>
<td>Delay used by the service to wait for dependencies on Windows® XP to become available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>listenerPort</td>
<td>TCP port that the publisher uses to receive content from the Enterprise Distributor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>networkChunkSizeInKb</td>
<td>Throttles the size of blobs sent from the Distributor to the Publisher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>purgeTimeout</td>
<td>Count in minutes between purge cycles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>publishRoot</td>
<td>The file system location of the virtual directory.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As with other publishers, the Player Enterprise Publisher executes under the "AxisTV Publishing Services" service.
11.17.9 Configuring the Enterprise Distributor

The Enterprise Distributor is configured using the Web UX. The Configure | Scalability Options | Player Publishers screen allows definition of all publishers as well as the players each publisher owns.

If the Publishing Scheme is one of the Multi-Tier choices, then the Player Publishers screen will include a publishers section that allows for definition of publishers and the associated players. The help for this screen details the purpose of each section.

11.17.10 Publication Delay

If Multi-Tier with Message Importance is chosen you can specify publication delays associated with presumably lower-importance messages and playlists. The Enterprise Distributor sorts all messages from the most importance to the least, using the numeric values shown in the Message Importance section of this document. By adding delays, you can insure that extremely important messages don’t have to wait on an unimportant message. The Enterprise Distributor will actually skip messages based on the delay. So, if an unimportant message has an associated delay of 15 minutes, then the distributor will skip it up to 15 times, giving higher importance message a chance to be distributed first. When the delay has expired the unimportant message is sent, but behind more important message in the same push cycle.

Most installations should use either Playlist Importance only or Message Importance only, but not both. Using both will require care on the part of the administrator to ensure the desired results.

To enable hundreds of players, there must be more than one publishing point. Each publishing point must enable simultaneous distribution to multiple players, based on network segmentation.
### 11.17.11 Configuration

#### 11.17.11.1 Tei.Settings.xml

This file is contained within the same directory as the server executable files. Below are the portions of the file that control Delayed Distribution

```xml
<DistributionRules>

<DelayThreshold>

<ChannelPlayers count="0" threshold="0">
  <ChannelPlayer1 name="Channel Player DNS" threshold="30" />
  <ChannelPlayer2 name="Channel Player DNS" threshold="30" />
</ChannelPlayers>

</DelayThreshold>

</DistributionRules>
```

#### 11.17.11.2 <DelayThreshold><ChannelPlayers> Options

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>count</td>
<td>The number of Channel Player entries in the list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>threshold</td>
<td>Playback start time minus threshold = the earliest time that the media can be sent to the player. This value is in minutes. The ChannelPlayers value represents the default for all players. A value &lt;= 0 indicates no delay at all. The ChannelPlayerN value represents the value for a specific player, which overrides the default. It is valid to enter a count of “0” and specify a default for all players.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ChannelPlayer1…N</td>
<td>Each entry must be numbered from 1 to count.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>The Channel Player DNS, which must match the value known by the Content Manager/Server.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
11.18 Configuring the Remote Control API and SDK

The Visix remote control application programming interface (API) and associated software development kit (SDK) are available for download to interested parties. The SDK is distributed, upon request, at no charge to registered clients and partners, while the API is licensed to individual servers for a fee.

Visix believes there is long-term value in a content management SDK allowing any number of parties to develop applications or interfaces capable of controlling specific facets of the Visix line of visual communications applications. The first component of this far-reaching SDK is an AxisTV-controllable API for sale and use by organizations wanting to manipulate or trigger AxisTV from an external interface to interrupt playback of regularly scheduled content and replace it with alternate communications.

You can install the Remote Control API onto the same computer as the AxisTV Content Manager or on a different computer. If you need to invoke the Remote Control API from an internet client then Visix strongly recommends installing the Remote Control API onto a separate computer from the AxisTV Content Manager and isolating the internet-exposed computer with firewalls on either side.

You can install the Remote Control API and SDK from two installers:

- AxisTV Content Services
- AxisTV Remote Control API and SDK

The AxisTV Remote Control API and SDK installer is much smaller than the AxisTV Content Services installer and may be more convenient to use when installing the API alone. Regardless of which installer you use, the API and SDK are located in the feature named “Remote Control” (see image to the right).

In the AxisTV Content Services installer the Remote Control feature is deselected by default.

There are two subfeatures, the API and SDK. Customers that wish to develop client software to interact with the API should install the SDK onto a developer workstation.

The AxisTV Content Manager must have the “Remote Control API” license key activated in order for API requests to be honored. Once the license is applied and the API is installed onto the same or a different computer the API must be configured to point to the correct AxisTV Content Manager computer.

Go to Start | Programs | Visix | Configure Remote Control API

This shortcut executes the AxisTV Web Configuration Utility. You can enter the Application Server (Content Manager) DNS or IP Address, and TCP port. If you install the API onto the same box as the Content Manager then the Initialize or Upgrade Device wizards will assume the API should point to the locally installed Content Manager. If you install the API onto another computer you must manually configure the identity of the Content Manager.

SDK Developer Kit

The Remote Control SDK available from the installers is intended for use by developers that wish to write applications that can invoke AxisTV programmatically to perform bulletin, scheduling and channel player tasks.

The SDK comes with two files, both installed in the RemoteControlSdk subdirectory under AxisTV Content Services (unless the installer chooses a different location):

- *rcapi.pdf* documents how to install, configure, test and develop clients for the Remote Control API.
- *SamplesProject.zip* contains a Visual Studio 2008 .NET Forms client that invokes all major services within the API.
12 Configuring the Screen Layout – v.7.0.1 – v.7.0.8

*If you are using v.7.0.9 or higher, please skip Section 12 entirely and refer to the instructions in Section 13: Configuring the Screen Layout v.7.0.9 and higher*

12.1 Creating Content Blocks

- The screen is divided into Content Blocks. Each Content Block contains a Playlist or a Crawllist (ticker).

- The screen is measured in pixels. For example, a display that has a resolution of 1366 X 768 is 1366 pixels wide and 768 pixels high.

- Each content block should be configured to populate a certain area on the screen.

- In the picture below, Playlist 1 is selected to play in Content Block 1.

![Content Block Configuration](image)

- To designate the location of Content Block 1, first decide the number of pixels from the far left of the screen the content block will begin. Enter this number into the “Left:” field. In the picture below, the Left coordinate will be 0 because the content block starts at the far left edge of the display.

- Next, enter the number of pixels from the top you want the content block to begin. In the picture below, content block 1 (green) will begin 10 pixels from the top. Enter 10 in the “Top:” field.

- Now, tell Axis TV the Width of the content block, in pixels. In the picture below, the width of Content Block 1 is 916 pixels, enter 916 in the “Width:” field.

- Finally, enter the desired height of content block in the “Height:” field. The height of this content block is 687 pixels.

- Click on “Change” after entering all coordinates for content block 1. You must click on Change for each row you change, and can only change or add one row at a time.
Repeat this process for Content Block 2 (orange).

- Select the playlist you wish to play in Content Block 2.
- Enter the coordinates Left: Top: Width: Height.
- Because you are adding a new content block, click “Add” when you finish to save your changes before moving on to the next row.

In the example below, Content Block 2 will show Playlist 2 and will begin at 916 pixels from the far Left of the screen because it will begin where content block 1 ends. It will start 10 pixels from the top, the same as Content block 1, but because it is a smaller block, you see the width and height will be less then content block 1.

Repeat the process for content block 3 (purple). See below.
12.2 To add a Crawllist or a Ticker:
Instead of selecting a playlist from the Playlist Field, leave that field at “N/A” and select a ticker from the Crawllist field. In the picture below, we have selected Ticker 1 to play in Content Block 4 (bright blue). You can see that our Crawllist will start at the far left edge of the screen and continue for the entire width of the screen, which is 1366 pixels, but it will only be 60 pixels in height.

12.3 Floating Date and Time

- Expand the Floating Date and Time Menu
- Select Yes in the Show?
- Enter the Location on the screen in pixels, in the same manner as configuring content blocks

- Select Font Name
- Select Text Height – note this is height in pixels, not standard font point size
- Select Text Color
- Select Date Format and Alignment
- Select Time Format and Alignment

Note: Floating Date and Time does not work when displaying the Video Window Option
12.4 Video Window or Stream Window

Video Window and Stream Window Options require licensing from Visix. If you have purchased the option, you will find the option to configure the Window under Configure | Channel Player | Current Settings | Mode or Configure | Channel Player | Layouts | Mode. Video/Stream Windows are configured in the same manner as content blocks and floating date and time.

For Video Window
- Select Yes in the Video Window Enabled field.
- Select Composite or S-video as the Video Source
- Enter location on the screen in pixels Left: Top: Width: Height (for more detail see previous section on Creating Content Blocks)
- Click on Update

For Stream Window – Same as above but you do not select a video source.

After configuring the screen for the Window, you will then need to schedule a Video or Stream Program. See Now Playing section for more information.
13 Configuring the Screen Layout – Channel Players - v.7.0.9 and higher

*If you are using v.7.0.1 – v.7.0.8, please skip this section entirely, and refer to Section 12: Configuring the Screen Layout – v.7.0.1 – v.7.0.8

If you are using v.7.0.18 and higher, please refer to Section 11, Feature Configuration Guide, AxisTV Desktop for detailed instructions on creating and editing the screen layout.

13.1 Stock Layouts, Wallpapers, and Custom Layouts

- The screen is divided into Content Blocks. Each Content Block contains a Playlist or a Crawllist (ticker).
- The screen is measured in pixels. For example, a display that has a resolution of 1366 X 768 is 1366 pixels wide and 768 pixels high.
- Each content block should be configured to populate a certain area on the screen.

13.2 Content Blocks and Overlays

When you start editing a layout the WYSIWYG area assumes you want to add a new content block or overlay.

If there are any existing overlays present in the layout, there will an add button, a select top button and a select bottom button.

When overlays are present all content blocks are on the lower layer (behind) and all overlays are in the upper layer (front).

Add Button and Select Button

When no overlays are present there will be an add button and a simple select button.

- When you are in select mode and mouse over the existing content blocks and overlays their boundaries glow to indicate you can select them.
- Once a content block or overlay is selected sizing handles appear. You can click and drag the block around, and resize it.
- A speaker will be displayed in the lower-right corner when audio is associated with the layout.
- Overlays can be positioned directly over content blocks. The overlays are depicted has semi-transparent so that you can see the content blocks underlying them.
- Ticker blocks will use T, while playlist blocks will use P to assist in identifying the block. VFO is use for Video Feed Overlays, VSO for Video Stream Overlays and DTO for Date Time Overlays.
13.2.1 Adding a Content Block or Overlay

When you use the add block or overlay tool you should position the pointer in an area where a block or overlay can be added. Blocks cannot overlap one another but an overlay can overlap a block.

Your choices are constrained by licensing and what’s already present in the layout.

It is typically easier to add the block or overlay in approximately the correct location then fine tune it with the mouse or edit the coordinates manually.

Selected Block or Overlay Details

- **Delete Block** - You can delete any and all blocks and overlays, one at a time.

- **Placement / Apply** - If you need to adjust the placement of a block or overlay manually you can type in the coordinate and click Apply.

- **Playlist** - Content blocks contain playlists or tickers. The list of available playlists is already limited to the playlists on the same play mode as the layout.

- **Ticker** - Content blocks contain playlists or tickers. The list of available tickers is already limited to the ticker son the same play mode as the layout.

- **Overlays** – Overlays can be video streams, video feeds or floating date and time.
  
  - Select Video Streams to create a Video Stream Window. Note: You must be licensed for streaming media in order to see and select a Video Stream
  
  - Select Video Feeds to create a standard Video Window using a video capture card. Note: You must be licensed for Video Window in order to see and select a Video Feed
  
  - Select Floating date and time to create a floating date or time or both. You can control the font, text height, color and alignment (left, center, right) of each element you include. To change the text height you must click Apply.

- **Edit** - You can edit existing layouts using a WYSIWYG editor from within the web application if your web server is configured to support smart clients. Otherwise the 'Edit' button will not be displayed and you will need to download and install the AxisTV Display Layout Editor onto your PC. You can find this utility in the System Tools | Install
• Layout Editor screen.

• Schedule - You can schedule a layout to play at certain times, as long as the layout is associated with the "Normal" play mode. All other modes only support 1 layout, so there can be no schedule. Scheduling is actually handled by the Schedule Layout screen.

• Apply to player - You can apply a layout to a player immediately, as long as the layout is associated with the "Normal" play mode. All other modes only support 1 layout - and they are always applied to the player.

• Summary - The Summary section displays high-level information about the selected layout. Note that Display Resolution indicates the resolution the layout expects, not the resolution currently applied to the display. The WYSIWYG editor allows you to very easily reconcile layout expectations to the actual display resolution.

![Image of Layout Editor screen]

• Each defined content block is represented in this list. Each block's placement is in pixels.
  ➢ P block are playlists
  ➢ T blocks are tickers
  ➢ VFO are video feed overlays
  ➢ VSO are video stream overlays
  ➢ DTO are date time overlays.

• Preview - The preview thumbnail demarks the content blocks using the same designations as the Content Blocks section, so you can easily match details to the visual representation. You can view a full-size preview by clicking the image.

• *Note that all overlay windows are drawn half-transparent in the preview so that you can see if a regular content block lies below them.
14 AxisTV User Guide

Note: Screen captures and directions in this section are based on Administrator settings. Users may not see all options presented.

14.1 Login

- Login via Web
- Enter User ID
- Enter Password
- Click Login

14.2 Welcome

- Verify User ID under date
- Note bulletins & crawls requiring approval

14.3 Screen Navigation

- Every Web page includes an expandable menu and Logout links for easy navigation or program termination
- Each page is divided into two parts, a navigation tree to the left and the workspace to the right.
- The current section is highlighted in "bold" for easy reference
- Dropdown menus are used in the workspace for convenient selection
- Helpful hints and prompts appear in red text at the top right
- Clicking the Help Button (“?”) in the upper right of the screen will open the AxisTV help section in a separate window

➢ Use the CONTENTS, INDEX and SEARCH features of the Help section to seek "How To" tips, documentation and Support instructions.
14.4 Mass Alert Notification

Note: Mass Alert Notification is available for customers using AxisTV v.7.0.22 and higher. This feature is licensed separately. Please contact your Visix sales representative to purchase this feature.

Note: Please see Configure | Mass Alert Notification to configure this feature.

- The ability to quickly mass communicate to groups of individuals in the case of an emergency has become critical for higher education and businesses throughout the world. AxisTV now has the ability to respond to mass alert notification conditions by halting all normal operations and focusing all system resources exclusively on the processing and distribution of mass alert content to all channel players that are part of the installation.

- AxisTV’s mass alert notification also supports the Common Alert Protocol 1.1 (CAP) standard, as described by OASIS. AxisTV can handle both synchronous and asynchronous CAP alerts from third parties. This release of the Mass Alert Notification feature provides integration with e2Campus through the CAP listener.

- The Mass Alert Notification will continue until an intentional action is taken to stop it. This interaction can be prompted by an authorized user through a specially designed screen, a cancellation or expiration date by a third party through CAP, or a cancellation by a third party through a previously defined web service.

- Only users with the System Administrator role will have the ability to activate, as well as create, append and remove messages, and deactivate the Mass Alert Notification feature.

- If an AxisTV user attempts to log into the web interface when Mass Alert Notification is active, they will be unable to successfully log in and instead will see a screen message that states “Mass Alert Notification is on” as seen in the image to the right.
14.5 Create

14.5.1 Text Bulletin

Used to create basic bulletins via the Web.

- Name your bulletin
- Enter bulletin text in text box
- Choose font
- Choose font color
- Choose font size
  - Recommend Font Size checkbox: Uncheck if you want to specify font size
  - The system will alert you with a red message in the top left corner if font choices are against recommendations
- Apply font styles
  - Bold, Italic, Underline, and Strikethrough are available
- Spell check
- Choose background
- Place text on screen
  - Alignment grid: These radial buttons allow you to choose how and where your text is aligned on the screen
  - Nudge arrows: Use these arrows for incremental adjustments
- Choose audio
- **NOTE:** You can only associate audio with a bulletin if you added audio files to your audio library under the "manage" link in the navigation tree. Audio will only play during the "visual" duration of the bulletin
- Message Importance
  - This option applies only to Enterprise licensed systems. It has no effect unless Multi-Tier Player Publishing is enabled with Message Importance. This setting controls the relative order in which messages are distributed to players.
- Preview
  - Auto preview: The browser will automatically refresh and update as you make changes
- Cancel: Cancels your bulletin
- Group: Groups bulletins together for convenient scheduling of related bulletins
- Next: Advances to the scheduling page
  - See SCHEDULE section
14.5.2 **Text Bulletin with Title**

Used to create basic bulletins via the Web that include an independent title and body.

- Enter title text in title box
- Choose font
- Choose font color
- Choose font size
  - Recommend Font Size checkbox: Uncheck if you want to specify font size
- Apply font styles
  - Bold, Italic, Underline, and Strikethrough are available
- Spell check
- Choose background
- Position title text on screen
  - Alignment grid: These radial buttons allow you to choose how and where your text is aligned on the screen
  - Nudge arrows: Use these arrows for incremental adjustments
- Choose audio
  - **NOTE:** You can only associate audio with a bulletin if you added audio files to your audio library under the “manage” link in the navigation tree. Audio will only play during the “visual” duration of the bulletin.
  - Message Importance
    This option applies only to Enterprise licensed systems. It has no effect unless Multi-Tier Player Publishing is enabled with Message Importance. This setting controls the relative order in which messages are distributed to players.

- Enter body text in text box
- Choose font
- Choose font color
- Choose font size
  - Recommend Font Size checkbox: Uncheck if you want to specify font size
- Apply font styles
  - Bold, Italic, Underline, and Strikethrough are available
- Spell check
- Position body text on screen
  - Alignment grid: These radial buttons allow you to choose how and where your text is aligned on the screen
  - Nudge arrows: Use these arrows for incremental adjustments
- Preview
  - Auto preview: The browser will automatically refresh and update as you make changes
- Cancel: Cancels your bulletin
- Group: Groups bulletins together for convenient scheduling of related bulletins
- Next: Moves on to the scheduling page
  - See **SCHEDULE** section
14.5.3  **Bulletin from Template**  
A two-step process which allows you to create a bulletin from an existing template.

*Note: Available for customers using v.7.0.18 and higher.*

**Step 1:** Choose a template by clicking the template thumbnail image

**Step 2:** Create bulletin by adding text and/or graphics.

Note: The following properties may or may not be available. The options you have will depend on whether or not they are “locked”. Template creators may set specific bulletin parameters for creating bulletins from templates. For example, you may have the ability to add text, but may not be able to change the background image or font size). For additional information, please contact your AxisTV or Network Administrator.

**Sample Template Image 1**

The image shows how the screen will look with all template attributes *unlocked*. The Text box, Font Attributes, Background, Audio and Alignment options are available with this template.

**Sample Template Image 2**

The image shows how the screen will look with several attributes locked. The user is able to enter text, spell check and preview their bulletin. The other features seen in Sample Image 1 are not displayed because they are not available for this particular template

- **Name Your Bulletin:** You can choose any name you wish. This name does NOT appear anywhere on the bulletin, but does appear in the Playlists that play the bulletin. This name also appears in the My Content screen. This property cannot be locked.

- **Audio:** Select an audio file from the drop down menu to play when the bulletin is displayed.

  *Note: This feature is only available if the Template Creator has made it accessible and if audio files have been uploaded to the Content Manager (see Manage | Audio Files).*
• **Background**: Select a background image for your bulletin by clicking it from the drop-down menu or using the button with three dots to the right of the drop down menu. This button displays a pop-up window that provides a thumbnail preview of the background images available on the Content Manager.

   *Note: This feature is only available if the Template Creator has made it accessible*

• **Text**: You may enter Text in the available text box.

• **Font Attributes**: You may control all aspects of the font including: Bold, Italic, Underline, Strikethrough, Color, Font Name (Style), and Font Size. Any combination of these properties may be locked by the template creator

• **Text Alignment**: You may depict where you want your text alignment simply by clicking one of the nine circles.

   *Note: This feature is only available if the Template Creator has made it accessible*

• **Preview**: You may select the preview button at any time to view the most current rendering of your bulletin. The screen automatically refreshes to provide you an updated preview each time you make a change.

• **Cancel and Next Navigation Buttons**: The Cancel navigation button lets you cancel back to the previous function (or screen) or you may select “Next” to proceed to scheduling the bulletin if you have scheduling privileges or back to the Welcome Screen if you do not have scheduling privileges.
14.5.4 Media Bulletin

The Create Media Bulletin (Import Image/Video) screen allows you to create one or more still graphic or video bulletins as a group.

Name Your Bulletin: You can choose any name you wish. This name does NOT appear anywhere on the bulletin, but does appear in the Now Playing | Playlists that play the bulletin. This name also appears in the Manage | My Content screen.

Aspect Ratio: You can choose any available aspect ratio from the drop down menu. This will potentially stretch or compress the still images (but not videos). Videos maintain their own aspect ratio internally.

There are two methods to select and schedule a Media Bulletin:

1. **Browse and Upload File NOW:** If you want to create a bulletin from a file on your PC, you can use the Browse button to find it and the Upload File NOW button to send it to AxisTV. The file size must not exceed 20 MB when using this option. If the file size is greater than 20 MB, use the **AxisTV Media Importer** to upload the file to the AxisTV Content Manager. You may then use option #2 below to choose and schedule the file.

2. **Choose an Existing File:** If you want to create a bulletin from existing images or videos located on your AxisTV Content Manager, you can choose the image or video using the drop-down list and click **Pick Existing NOW.** The files located in this drop-down list may be previewed under the menu headings Manage | Graphic Files and Manage | Video Files. Files uploaded to the Content Manager using the **AxisTV Media Importer** allow you to upload files exceeding 20 MB so that you may select them from this drop-down menu and schedule accordingly.

**Flash® movie (SWF) Frame Rate Warning Message (available for customers using v.7.0.14.2 and higher):** If you upload a Flash® movie (SWF) and it exceeds 12 frames per second you will see a warning similar to:

Flash Movies exceeding 12 frames per second should be converted to MPEG, WMV or AVI in order to play properly. The selected file is 30 frames per second.

Visix recommends that Flash® movies (SWF) not exceed 12 frames per second in order to play properly when other animations and videos are playing concurrently in other playlists or a stream/video overlay on the channel players. Anytime the frame rate of a Flash® movie (SWF) exceeds 12 frames per second the rate warning message will be displayed.
**Message Importance (available only to customers with Enterprise licensed systems):** Message Importance has no effect unless **Multi-Tier Player Publishing** is enabled with Message Importance. This setting controls the relative order in which messages are distributed to players.

**Cancel:** Selecting Cancel takes you back to the previous function or screen

![Goto Bulletin 1 2](image)

(Current Bulletin is #2 in the group)

**Group:** Selecting the Group button allows you to add more Media Bulletins before you advance to the scheduling screen. When you click the (+) Group button to add bulletins to the group, new buttons automatically appear that let you select the current bulletin you are editing. You can use these buttons to adjust the properties of any of the bulletins in the group.

**Next:** Select the Next button to schedule the bulletin or group of bulletins.
- See [SCHEDULE section](#)

### 14.5.5 Graphic Link

**Used to fetch images that reside external to AxisTV and refresh at user specified intervals.**

- Name your bulletin
- Choose aspect ratio
  - Preserve graphic’s native aspect ratio inside bulletin
  - Use the selected background as a matte (else black bars may appear)
- Choose background
- Choose link type
- Enter link path
- Set “Refetch” rate (refreshing your image from the original source)
- Choose “On fetch error” setting
- Enter alternate text for instances where graphic cannot be viewed
- Preview
  - Auto preview: The browser will automatically update as you make changes
- Cancel: Cancels your bulletin
- Group: Groups bulletins together for convenient scheduling of related bulletins
- Next: Moves on to the scheduling page
  - See [SCHEDULE section](#)
14.5.6  Web Page Bulletin

The Create | Web Page Bulletin screen allows you to create a bulletin that displays a web page on the channel player.

*Note: Available for customers using v.7.0.17 and higher. You must be licensed for Web Page Bulletin to utilize this feature.*

**Name Your Bulletin:** You can choose any name you wish. This name does NOT appear anywhere on the bulletin, but does appear in the Play Lists that play the bulletin. This name also appears in the My Content screen.

**URL:** Enter the complete URL to the web page you wish to display. You must specify an URL that the channel players can access and understand. If you are unsure how to do this please consult a network administrator.

**Important Notes:**

- The web page may not display completely within the channel player's content block, but may be cropped. The channel player does not resize, stretch or compress web pages.

- Visix cannot guarantee any particular web page will be playable on the channel player, especially web pages with embedded applets and smart clients or plugins.

To ensure that you have entered the URL correctly, you can use the Test URL button. This button does not guarantee the channel player can display the web page, only that the URL is correctly typed.

*Note: To ensure a particular web page will play on the Channel Player, you may test the URL on the channel player hardware. Please consult your AxisTV or Network Administrator for assistance.*

**Cancel:** Cancels your bulletin

**Next:** Moves on to the scheduling page

- See SCHEDULE section

14.5.7  Free Form Bulletin

Free Form is a highly customizable creation tool.

To create Free Form bulletins, the AxisTV FreeForm Editor client application must be installed on your PC (please refer to System Tools | Install Free Form Editor). Once the application is installed, the user will be able to create bulletins using FreeForm.

- Open the AxisTV FreeForm Editor from your PC
- Click on the Start menu
- Go to All Programs
- Select Visix
- Select AxisTV FreeForm Editor
14.5.7.1 Running FreeForm Editor

Step 1 - Configuring Connection

➢ The URL textbox must point to the root of the AxisTV Content Server’s Web UX. It will normally be in the form http://server-name or https://ip-address. Please consult your administrator or IT department if you need assistance obtaining your AxisTV URL. Each time you launch the FreeForm Editor, the connection to the Content Manager/Server must be tested with the Test Connection… button.

➢ Use Default Proxy should be checked if there is a proxy between the editor and the Content Manager/Server. The Credentials… button can store the credentials necessary to authenticate through the proxy server. These credentials aren’t always needed. Your IT department will have to specify both the default proxy usage and the credentials, if required.

➢ Select Test Connection to open the dialog window that performs the test. The connection must be tested using the AxisTV User ID and AxisTV Password.

Step 2 – Create or Edit Message

• Once connected to the Content Manager/Server, the user can create new messages or edit existing ones.

• Create Message displays the smart client in create mode, while Edit Existing Message first displays a dialog in which the user can select an existing FreeForm bulletin.
  o Name your bulletin
  o Choose a background from either the drop down menu or select the “…” button to open the Background Browser
  o Choose audio

NOTE: You can only associate audio with a bulletin if you added audio files to your audio library under the “manage” link in the navigation tree. Audio will only play during the “visual” duration of the bulletin.

• Choose aspect ratio
• Select Add section
  o Click the Add Section each time you want to add text or graphic component to your bulletin
  o Drag and drop functionality: You can drag, expand, collapse and alter the shape of your selected section with your mouse
• Section Properties - Choose text or graphic element
  o Text: Enter text
  o Choose font, font color and font size
  o Apply font styles: Bold, Italic, Underline, and Strikethrough are available
  o Check spelling
  o Alignment: Choose the placement and alignment of your text within your section
• Graphic
  o Upload File: Click this button to open your browser window and choose a file to upload
  o Choose Existing: Click this button to view the image library
  o Use navigation buttons to browse through the image library
  o First, Backward, Forward and Last
  o Click on an image to choose graphic
  o Choose transition type

• Advanced controls
  o To Front: Moves the selected section to the front, in relationship to all other sections
  o To Back: Moves the selected section to the back, in relationship to all other sections
  o More: This button will show fly out menus with more formatting options for the selected section
  o Bring to front
  o Push to back
  o Snap to: This option will align your section
  o Center, left, right, top or bottom
  o Fill: section will fill the entire bulletin

• Aspect ratio
• Delete section: deletes the selected section
• Insert or Copy bulletin: This button allows you to insert or copy another bulletin into your current design
  o Follow the directions on the pop up screen
• Bulletins in Group: This section allows you to manage your current bulletin group
• Remove: Removes bulletin from group
• Add: Add bulletin to group

Step 3 – Save or Cancel

When the messages have been created or edited, the user can either save their work or discard all changes. Cancel Operation validates the user’s desire, in case of an accidental click.

Save Message saves the new or existing messages, then offers the user a shortcut to the Schedule Bulletin web page that can be used to add a schedule to the new or existing messages.

• See SCHEDULE section
14.5.8 Event Schedule Bulletin

Used to create the finished visual appearance of an event schedule with data extracted from another source.

See MANAGE: Events to configure events

- Name event group
- Choose event start date
- Limit number of bulletins
- Display "" days
  - Choose number of event day schedules to display
- Adjust time by "" hours to current time (displayed under Start)
- Stop displaying event
  - Checkbox allows you to override standard which stops displaying event after end time has elapsed
  - Choose number of minutes after start time
- Filters
  - Rooms, Statuses and Types
- Include or Exclude
  - Rooms, Statuses and Types
  - Use arrow tools to move criteria between columns
  - Highlight single criteria or hold and highlight groups
  - Use double arrow tools to move all criteria in a column
- Cancel: Cancels your bulletin
- Next: Moves to formatting page
- Choose background
- Choose aspect ratio
- Choose audio
  - NOTE: You can only associate audio with a bulletin if you added audio files to your audio library under the "manage" link in the navigation.
  - Audio will only play during the "visual" duration of the bulletin.
- Show date using checkbox and format choices
  - Choose text format options
  - Enter section coordinates to position on bulletin
- Show the title checkbox and text box: enter title text
  - Choose text format options
  - Enter section coordinates to position on bulletin
- Event attributes
  - Choose text format options
  - Enter section coordinates to position on bulletin
- Show location using checkbox
  - Choose text format options
  - Enter section coordinates to position on bulletin
  - Include building name checkbox
- Cancelled event attributes
  - Choose text format options
- Time uses format
  - Choose text format options
  - Enter section coordinates to position on bulletin
- Choose bulletin pacing
- Enter group padding
- Enter text in case of no events
- Preview
  - Auto preview: The browser will automatically update as you make changes
  - Preview button: Click at any time to preview your bulletin
- Cancel: Cancels your bulletin
- Back: Moves to previous page
- Next: Moves on to the scheduling page

See SCHEDULE section
14.5.9 Weather Bulletin
Used to create the finished visual appearance of a weather message with data extracted from NOAA via the Web.

▶ See CONFIGURE: Weather Adapter to configure weather

- Name your bulletin
- Forecast starts
  - Choose start day
  - Choose number of days
- Choose background
- Choose location
- Choose aspect ratio
- Choose audio
  - NOTE: You can only associate audio with a bulletin if you added audio files to your audio library under the “manage” link in the navigation tree. Audio will only play during the “visual” duration of the bulletin.
- Show bulletin title checkbox and format choices
  - Choose text format options
  - Enter section coordinates to position on bulletin
- Show current weather checkbox and coordinate
  - Show the title checkbox and text box: enter title text
    - Choose text format options
    - Enter section coordinates to position on bulletin
    - Include timestamp checkbox
  - Show weather icon checkbox and alignment choice
    - Choose text format options
  - Show weather type checkbox
  - Show humidity checkbox
  - Show temperature icon checkbox
  - Show wind icon checkbox
- Show forecast weather checkbox and coordinate
  - Show the title checkbox and text box: enter title text
    - Choose text format options
    - Enter section coordinates to position on bulletin
  - Day uses: choose text format options
  - Body text uses: choose text format options
- Preview
  - Auto preview: The browser will automatically update as you make changes
  - Preview button: Click at any time to preview your bulletin
- Cancel: Cancels your bulletin
- Next: Moves on to the scheduling page
  - See SCHEDULE section
14.5.10 News Bulletin

See CONFIGURE: News Adapter to configure news

The Visix News Service enables you to create a news bulletin or news ticker that displays news data extracted from a remote data server via the Web.

Step 1: News Properties

- Enter group name (i.e. “Entertainment News”). The name you enter is not visible to your audience; it is for your reference.

- Choose a news category from the drop-down list (i.e. “Entertainment”). The category choices depend on how News is configured (Configure | News).

- Oldest Story - You must specify the age of the oldest story. The maximum age allowed is 5 days old - based on the published date.

- By default, only 1 story is selected per category, but you can increase that number, up to a maximum of 10 stories per category.

- Click the Next to configure the visual properties of your bulletin.

Step 2: Visual Properties

- You can choose any background that is available for the selected Aspect Ratio.

- You can choose any available Aspect Ratio and any available Audio file to play as background music.

- You can control all aspects of the font for each type of text that is displayed on the news bulletin: Bold. Italic. Underline. Strikethrough. Color. Font Name. Font Size.
• Bulletin title can be deselected, modified (i.e. type in the name of the news category for your audience) or removed. You may also specify the number of pixels from the top and left of the bulletin. The default setting is four pixels from the top and four pixels from the left.

• Headline titles can be positioned independently of the headline text. The positioning is limited to left-alignment. They may also be deselected.

• Brief titles can be positioned independently of the brief text. This positioning is limited to left-alignment. They may also be deselected.

• Publication date titles can be positioned independently of the publication date text. This positioning is limited to left-alignment. They may also be deselected.

• Source titles can be positioned independently of the source text. This positioning is limited to left-alignment. They may also be deselected.

• The bulletin preview updates whenever you change anything about the bulletin. However, you can always click Preview! to be sure you are viewing the most current rendering.
The navigation buttons allow you to select one of the following:
- Cancel – cancels your bulletin
- Back – takes you to the previous screen
- Choose Next to schedule your bulletin

To Schedule the News Bulletin:

AxisTV v.7.0.19 and higher includes a new feature that allows a user to schedule a bulletin/ticker to repeat on specific days of the week and for one or more time periods each day. This feature is referred to as “Daypart Interval” in the AxisTV web interface. The maximum amount of daypart intervals is 24.

Schedule Bulletin Options:
- Schedule Bulletin to Endpoint

The Schedule Bulletin to Endpoint screen allows you to schedule a group of bulletins to:
1. Channel Players
2. Media Appliances
3. Desktop Messenger and Text Messenger.

The options that are available are based on licensing. Depending upon the options available and the options you select, the schedule bulletin workflow will take you to the following screens, in this order:
- Schedule Bulletin to Playlist
- Schedule Bulletin to Content List
- Schedule Bulletin to Publisher

Choose one or multiple playlists from the playlist window

Important Note: If you have access to manage content for multiple modes of play (i.e. Normal and Alert), you may only select one or more playlists from the same mode of play when scheduling content.
You can choose to start showing the bulletin Today for a specific amount of time OR you can choose a start and end date and time.

You can also choose to have the bulletin play on a specific day or days within the chosen start and end date and time. Normally the start and stop dates and times are figured for each display, but if you check Override Local Time Zones then only the central AxisTV server’s time will be used.

You can choose to display the bulletin all day long OR from specific start to stop time intervals each day. The maximum number of Daypart Intervals for one day is 24. Normally the start and stop dates and times are figured for each display, but if you check Override Local Time Zones then only the central AxisTV server’s time will be used.

If the system is licensed for Playback Tracking, you can elect to record the playback times for a bulletin as scheduled on the play list.

You can control the amount of time that each bulletin is displayed by letting the system calculate a pace based on the amount of text OR by specifying a number of seconds yourself. The calculated pace is based on the number of words per second specified in the owning Aspect Ratio. The system administrator can adjust this value.

If you do not wish to schedule the bulletin at this time you can click Cancel. The bulletin is already saved and is available via My Bulletins. If you do want to schedule the bulletin given your settings then click Finished.

Go to Now Playing | Playlists and choose the playlist you scheduled your bulleting to so that you may view it in the specified play rotation.
14.5.11 **Ticker**

Used to generate the text message to appear in any number of tickers slated to any number of Channel Players.

14.5.11.1 **Text ticker**

- Enter text in text box
- Check spelling
- Preview
  - Auto preview: The browser will automatically update as you make changes
  - Preview button: Click at any time to preview your bulletin
- Cancel: Cancels your bulletin
- Next: Moves on to the scheduling page
  - See [SCHEDULE section](#)

14.5.11.2 **Weather ticker**

Used to generate the weather text data to appear in any number of tickers slated to any number of Channel Players. Data is supplied by NOAA via the Web.

- See [CONFIGURE: Weather Adapter](#) to configure weather

- Choose location
- Forecast starts
  - Choose start day
  - Choose number of days
- Include current weather checkbox
  - Include weather type checkbox
  - Include temperature checkbox
  - Include humidity checkbox
  - Include wind checkbox
- Include forecast weather checkbox
  - Include weather type checkbox
- Preview
  - Auto preview: The browser will automatically update as you make changes
  - Preview button: Click at any time to preview your bulletin
- Cancel: Cancels your bulletin
- Next: Moves on to the scheduling page
  - See [SCHEDULE section](#)
### 14.5.11.3 Stock ticker

Used to generate the stock text data to appear in any number of tickers slated to any number of Channel Players. Data is supplied by a third party (with account) via the Web.

- See **CONFIGURE: Stock Adapter** to configure stocks

- Included or Excluded stock symbols
  - Use arrow tools to move criteria between columns
  - Highlight single criteria or hold and highlight groups
  - Use double arrow tools to move all criteria in a column
- Enter leading text
- Choose price timestamp format
- Include checkboxes: Symbol, Name, Share Price, Price Change and Trading Volume
- Enter separator text
- Enter closing text
- Preview
  - Auto preview: The browser will automatically update as you make changes
  - Preview button: Click at any time to preview your bulletin
- Cancel: Cancels your bulletin
- Next: Moves on to the scheduling page
  - See **SCHEDULE** section

### 14.5.11.4 News ticker

Used to generate the news text data to appear in any number of tickers slated to any number of Channel Players. The data is supplied by UPI via the Web.

- See **CONFIGURE: News Adapter** to configure news

- Include news headline checkbox
- Include news brief checkbox
- Include published date checkbox
- Select category
  - Current category is displayed
- Enter separator text
- Preview
  - Auto preview: The browser will automatically update as you make changes
  - Preview button: Click at any time to preview your bulletin
- Cancel: Cancels your bulletin
- Next: Moves on to the scheduling page
  - See **SCHEDULE** section
14.6 Import

14.6.1 Import Image / Video

The Import Image/Video (Create | Media Bulletin) screen allows you to create one or more still graphic or video bulletins as a group.

Name Your Bulletin: You can choose any name you wish. This name does NOT appear anywhere on the bulletin, but does appear in the Now Playing | Playlists that play the bulletin. This name also appears in the Manage | My Content screen.

Aspect Ratio: You can choose any available aspect ratio from the drop down menu. This will potentially stretch or compress the still images (but not videos). Videos maintain their own aspect ratio internally.

There are two methods to select and schedule a Media Bulletin (Import Image/Video):

2. Browse and Upload File NOW: If you want to create a bulletin from a file on your PC, you can use the Browse button to find it and the Upload File NOW button to send it to AxisTV. The file size must not exceed 20 MB when using this option. If the file size is greater than 20 MB, use the AxisTV Media Importer to upload the file to the AxisTV Content Manager. You may then use option #2 below to choose and schedule the file.

Choose an Existing File: If you want to create a bulletin from existing images or videos located on your AxisTV Content Manager, you can choose the image or video using the drop-down list and click Pick Existing NOW. The files located in this drop-down list may be previewed under the menu headings Manage | Graphic Files and Manage | Video Files. Files uploaded to the Content Manager using the AxisTV Media Importer allow you to upload files exceeding 20 MB so that you may select them from this drop-down menu and schedule accordingly.

Flash® movie (SWF) Frame Rate Warning Message (available for customers using v.7.0.14.2 and higher): If you upload a Flash® movie (SWF) and it exceeds 12 frames per second you will see a warning similar to:

Flash Movies exceeding 12 frames per second should be converted to MPEG, WMV or AVI in order to play properly. The selected file is 30 frames per second.

Visix recommends that Flash® movies (SWF) not exceed 12 frames per second in order to play properly when other animations and videos are playing concurrently in other playlists or a stream/video overlay on the channel players. Anytime the frame rate of a Flash® movie (SWF) exceeds 12 frames per second the rate warning message will be displayed.
**Message Importance (available only to customers with Enterprise licensed systems):** Message Importance has no effect unless Multi-Tier Player Publishing is enabled with Message Importance. This setting controls the relative order in which messages are distributed to players.

**Cancel:** Selecting Cancel takes you back to the previous function or screen.

**Group:** Selecting the Group button allows you to add more Media Bulletins before you advance to the scheduling screen. When you click the (+) Group button to add bulletins to the group, new buttons automatically appear that let you select the current bulletin you are editing. You can use these buttons to adjust the properties of any of the bulletins in the group.

**Next:** Select the Next button to schedule the bulletin or group of bulletins.
- See SCHEDULE section

---

### 14.6.2 PowerPoint®

Used to import PowerPoint® files for delivery as AxisTV messages. Note: Requires PowerPoint® 2003 to be installed on Content Manager/Server.

**IMPORTANT NOTE:** For limitations on PowerPoint capabilities, please reference section 21.7.1.3.1

- Upload PowerPoint® File
- Browse your network or hard drives and choose a PowerPoint file
- PowerPoint import requires that you choose the ".ppt" file format
- Choose aspect ratio
- Convert to Flash: If there is at least one player licensed to play flash movies, then the Convert to Flash checkbox will be displayed. You can use this option to convert some slides or all slides in the presentation to flash movies.
  - **Note:** You may only select 10 slides at a time for large presentations. If you want to convert a presentation with 30 slides into flash movies, import the presentation 3 times, selecting 10 slides per import.
- Cancel: Cancels your bulletin
- Next: Moves to the slides page
  - Slide checkboxes: uncheck slides you do not want to include in your bulletins
  - Enter presentation name (save as)
- Cancel: Cancels your bulletin
- Group: Groups bulletins together for convenient scheduling of related bulletins
- Next: Moves on to the scheduling page
  - See SCHEDULE section
14.6.2.1.1 Converting PowerPoint® to Adobe Flash®

If a licensed version of PowerPoint® 2003 is installed on the Content Manager/Server and a licensed version of Adobe Flash® from Visix, Inc. is installed on the Content Manager/Server and the latest version of the Adobe Flash® player is installed on the Channel Player, PowerPoint® files (.ppt) created in PowerPoint® 2003 may be converted to an Adobe Flash® movie file, if selection box is checked next to “Convert to Flash®”.

14.6.2.1.2 Font Attributes and Paragraph Parsing for PowerPoint®

If a PowerPoint® presentation (.ppt) contains words and/or lines of text utilizing multiple/various font attributes (font name, font size, and font style), and the user imports the .ppt file into AxisTV (v.7.0.12 and higher) and then selects “Convert to Flash®”, AxisTV will parse each RUN (set of characters with the same font attributes).

- The characters "T" and "t" have same font attributes
- The letters "t" "T" "e" "r" and "e" have same font attributes
- The letters "v" and "T" have same font attributes

For each RUN, AxisTV will find the smallest font size, and convert every character in the entire paragraph to the smallest font size and that particular font’s name/style. This only applies when converting PowerPoint® to Flash®.

*Note: Transitions are parsed by the entire line of text, not by the RUN.
15 Now Playing

15.1 Playlists

Displays all of the media content scheduled to a specific playlist.

- See Configure: Content Settings/Playlists to configure playlists
- AxisTV ships with sample bulletins in the main playlist

- Choose playlist
- Choose bulletins with Today, All, Future or Not Approved checkboxes
- Choose universal transition type
- Playlist bulletin options
  - Select bulletin(s) checkbox and click Create Group to make groups
  - Choose transition for each bulletin
  - Edit bulletin: moves back to bulletin creation screen
  - Up button: moves bulletin up in playlist
  - Down button: moves bulletin down in playlist
  - Remove from schedule: deletes bulletin from playlist
  - Schedule information (See SCHEDULE section)

- Date range
- Time range
- User who created bulletin
- Source of bulletin creation
- Edit schedule: allows you to alter the bulletin schedule

15.2 Tickers

Displays all of the text tickers scheduled to a specific crawllist.

- See Configure: Content Settings/Crawllists to configure crawllists
- AxisTV ships with sample crawls in the main crawllist

- Crawl options
  - Edit bulletin: moves back to crawl creation screen
  - Up button: moves bulletin up in playlist
  - Down button: moves bulletin down in playlist
  - Remove from schedule: deletes bulletin from playlist
  - Schedule information (See SCHEDULE section)

- Date range
- Time range
- User who created bulletin
- Source of bulletin creation
- Edit schedule: allows you to alter the bulletin schedule
15.3 Streams
Displays the scheduled streams that play in a Stream Window and allows user to add, edit or delete a video stream. Streaming is licensed per Channel Player.

➢ Choose a Display Server (i.e. Channel Player)
➢ To Edit Stream Program
   • Select a date from the calendar
   • Select a Streaming Program
   • Select Edit or Delete
➢ To Add a new Program
   • Click on Add Program
   • Enter program name
   • Enter URL of Streaming Program
   • Specify whether the stream has audio
   • Schedule Date Range, Days and Time that stream will play

15.4 Video Feeds
Displays the scheduled video feeds that play in the Video Window and allows the user to add, edit or delete feeds.

• Choose display server (i.e. Channel Player)
• Add program (follow directions on screen)
• Video window enabled checkbox
• Video editing options
  • Edit: moves back to video import screen
  • Delete: deletes video from playlist

15.4.1 Video Feeds using a Tuner Card
*Available for version 7.0.12 and higher

Important!
If a Channel Player has a tuner card that requires configuration, then settings for the tuner card must be established before the content manager can correctly specify video programs via Now Playing | Video Feeds.

Once you have created or been given the Tuner Card settings file you must configure it in the content manager. Start by selecting the new Video Window Type in the Configure | Channel Players | Hardware screen.

15.5 Publishers
➢ See Configure: Desktop Messenger, RSS Publishing and Text Messenger to configure publishers
➢ AxisTV ships with sample bulletins in the main playlist

• Choose distribution list
• Choose bulletins with Today, All, and Future checkboxes
• Publisher bulletin options
  • Select bulletin(s) checkbox
  • Edit message: moves back to bulletin creation screen
  • Remove from schedule: deletes bulletin from playlist
• Date and time of message are displayed
• Edit schedule: allows you to alter the bulletin schedule
  (See SCHEDULE section)
15.6 Player Snapshots *(AxisTV v.7.0.21 and higher)*

The Channel Player Snapshots screen provides a list of all channel players currently added to the system and provides a 'snapshot' of what each channel player is currently playing. *Channel Player Snapshots is available for customers using AxisTV v.7.0.21 and higher.*

**Important Note:** Video Snapshots are not supported by WindowsXP with hardware acceleration turned on and may not appear in your snapshot.

You may configure how often you would like the Snapshots to be taken by going to **Configure | Content Settings | Channel Player Snapshots**.

- The minimum time you may enter for snapshot fetch is 15 minutes.
- You may sort the players by Device Name, Description, DNS Name/Address and Snapshot Time. This is especially helpful for large deployments.
- A thumbnail image appears with the text “No Snapshot Available” the first time you open this screen as depicted in the image to the right.
- You must select a channel player and refresh the system to activate screenshot capturing.
  - Check the box of the channel player(s) you want to view
  - Click the ‘Refresh’ button
  - A snapshot of the player’s current display layout with content will appear in place of the previous “place holder” graphic as depicted in the image to the right.
16 Manage

16.1.1 Approval

16.1.1.1 Playlists
Displays all of the media content scheduled to a specific playlist and enables Administrators to approve, edit or decline pending content.

- Choose folders
- Create folder: enter folder name
- Bulletin options
  - Select bulletin(s) checkbox
  - Edit bulletin: moves back to bulletin creation screen
  - Delete: deletes bulletin from system
    - If bulletin is currently scheduled, it must be removed from the schedule before it can be deleted from the system
- Schedule information (See SCHEDULE section)
- Approve: if bulletins are unapproved, administrator can approve

16.1.1.2 Tickers
Displays all of the text tickers scheduled to a specific crawllist and enables Administrators to approve, edit or decline pending content.

- Choose folders
- Create folder: enter folder name
- Choose crawls for
- Crawl options
  - Select crawl(s) checkbox
  - Edit crawl: moves back to crawl creation screen
  - Delete: deletes crawl system
    - If crawl is currently scheduled, it must be removed from the schedule before it can be deleted from the system
- Schedule information (See SCHEDULE section)
- Approve: if crawls are unapproved, administrator can approve

16.1.1.3 Video Feeds
Displays the scheduled video feeds and allows the user to add, edit or delete feeds and enables Administrators to approve, edit or decline pending content.

- Choose display server
- Choose date from calendar
- Add program (follow directions on screen)
- Video window enabled checkbox
- Video editing options
  - Edit: moves back to video import screen
  - Delete: deletes video from playlist
  - Approve: if videos are unapproved, administrator can approve
16.1.2 My Content

Allows users to better organize content they created.

- Folder Options
  - Choose an existing folder
  - Create a new folder
  - Enter a folder name and click the folder icon with the "+" symbol.
  - Select individual bulletins in alphabetical list by checking the "☐" provided next to each bulletin thumbnail image that you wish to include in the folder. Click "Add to folder" to remove the bulletins from the alphabetical listing and add them to the folder.

- Bulletin options
  - Select bulletin(s) checkbox
  - Edit bulletin: moves back to bulletin creation screen
  - Delete: deletes bulletin from system
    - If bulletin is currently scheduled, it must be removed from the schedule before it can be deleted from the system
  - Schedule information (See SCHEDULE section)

If you are using AxisTV v.7.0.22 and higher:

The functionality of unscheduling bulletins from one or more Playlists has been incorporated into Manage | My Content.

- Currently Scheduled: All bulletins and/or tickers that are playing in playlists and/or crawl lists will have the words 'Currently Scheduled' in red.
- On Playlist...: If a bulletin is currently scheduled, the button 'on Playlist...:' will be available for showing which playlist(s) it is on.
- Click the On Playlist button to view playlists and unschedule bulletins from one or more playlists. You may cancel should you decide not to unschedule one or more bulletins.
- Unschedule All / Unschedule: This will allow a user to unschedule a bulletin from one or all playlists. Select the Play Lists that you want to unschedule and click on the 'Unschedule' button. It is not necessary to select Play Lists when choosing 'Unschedule all'.
  - NOTE: A user can only unschedule bulletins that are assigned to him/her.
- Playlists Belonging to Other Users: The items listed here are to allow the User to see which Play Lists still have the bulletin/ticker scheduled.
  - Note: You will need to contact an Administrator, Content Approver or User who has access to these Play Lists if you need to have the bulletin unscheduled.
16.1.3 **My Templates**

Manage My Templates allows a user with the appropriate privileges to create a bulletin from a template or delete a template.

You may select a username from the drop-down menu to view templates created by individual users.

Administrators may refer to Configure | Security | Users and Configure | Security | Roles for additional information.

16.1.4 **My Tickers**

Allows users to better organize text, weather, news and stock crawls they created.

- Choose folders
- Create folder: enter folder name
- Choose crawls for
- Crawl options
  - Select crawl(s) checkbox
  - Edit crawl: moves back to crawl creation screen
  - Delete: deletes crawl system
    - If crawl is currently scheduled, it must be removed from the schedule before it can be deleted from the system
  - Schedule information (See SCHEDULE section)

If you are using AxisTV v.7.0.22 and higher:

The functionality of unscheduling tickers from one or more Crawl lists has been incorporated into Manage | My Tickers.

- **Currently Scheduled:** tickers that are playing in crawl lists will have the words ‘Currently Scheduled’ in red.
- **On CrawlList…:** If a ticker is currently scheduled, the button ‘on CrawlList…’ will be available for showing which crawl list(s) it is on.
- **Unschedule All / Unschedule:** This will allow a user to unschedule a ticker from one or all crawllists. Select the Crawl Lists that you want to unschedule and click on the ‘Unschedule’ button. It is not necessary to select Crawl Lists when choosing ‘Unschedule all’.
  - **NOTE:** A user can only unschedule bulletins that are assigned to him/her.
- **Crawl lists Belonging to Other Users:** The items listed here are to allow the User to see which Crawl List still have the ticker scheduled.
  - **Note:** You will need to contact an Administrator, Content Approver or User who has access to these Crawl Lists if you need to have the ticker unscheduled.
16.1.5 Events

16.1.5.1 Daily Events
Used to manually create, daily, weekly or longer-term event schedules.
- See MANAGE: Events/Rooms, Types and Statuses to set up event criteria
  - Choose date
  - Enter event description
  - Choose start time
  - Choose stop time
  - Choose room
  - Choose type
  - Choose status
  - Options
    - Change
    - Delete
    - Add

16.1.5.2 Rooms
Enter room names to be used in drop down menus for assigning events to rooms.
- Enter building name
- Enter room name
- Options
  - Delete
  - Add

16.1.5.3 Types
Enter event types to be used in drop down menus for assigning types of events (training, conference, meeting, etc…).
- Enter name or description
- Options
  - Delete
  - Add

16.1.5.4 Statuses
Enter event status descriptions to be used in drop down menus for assigning the status of events (scheduled, cancelled, confirmed, etc…).
- Enter name or description
- Indicate if status represents cancelled event
- Options
  - Delete
  - Change
  - Add
16.1.6 Graphic Files

The Manage Graphic Files screen allows you to manage the still graphics available for use as bulletins in the Create Media Bulletin screen, as well as for uploading files that are over 20 megabytes. The options you are given on this screen depend upon your privileges, as established by the system administrator.

Allows users to upload large graphic files to be stored in the AxisTV library.

- Click link to upload a graphic file to open the Upload Still Image screen to upload one or more external images.
  - Upload up to ten (10) Still Image files at once with this page. You must specify a name/description for each file that you upload. This name/description is used when creating or modifying bulletins or displays.
  - Click Upload Now to finish.
  - Note: Users may upload still images with files sizes up to 1.99 gigabytes.

- To Manage Existing Still Images
  - Enter or change file name in text box
  - File options
    - Change name
    - Delete image
  - Click refresh button to update listing
  - Enter or change file name in text box
  - File options
    - Change name
    - Delete image

AxisTV supports JPG, TIF, GIF, PNG, WMF and Microsoft Windows® bitmap (BMP) files.

16.1.7 Video Files

The Manage Video Files screen allows you to manage the video files available for use as bulletins in the Create Media Bulletin and Import | Image Video screens. The options you are given on this screen depend upon your privileges, as established by the system administrator.

- To Manage Existing Video Clips
  - Change name: Enter or change file name in text box
  - Delete video: Deletes the video permanently from the Content Manager
  - Preview video: Plays a preview of your video file using Windows Media Player.
  - Frames Per Second (available for customers using v.7.0.14.2 or higher): Anytime the frame rate of a Flash® movie (SWF) exceeds 12 frames per second the rate will be displayed. Visix recommends that Flash® movies (SWF) not exceed 12 frames per second in order to work well with other animations and videos playing at the same time on channel players.
To Upload Video Clips
- Click on the link provided to Upload Video Clips.
- You may upload up to ten (10) video clip files at once with this page, as long as the total file size does not exceed 20 MB.
- You must specify a name/description for each file that you upload. This name/description is used when creating or modifying bulletins or displays.
- Click Upload Now to finish.

Note: Use the AxisTV Media Importer to upload a file or multiple files that exceed 20 MB. The AxisTV Media Importer allows files totaling up to 1.99 gigabytes in a single import. Video files are automatically filed in the Manage | Video Files screen.

Video Clips can be uploaded if they have any of the following formats:
- Flash (SWF) (Flash® Web Player version 8 or higher must be installed on Channel Players)
- Windows Media (ASF)
- Windows Media (AVI)
- Windows Media (MPEG)
- Windows Media (MPG)
- Windows Media (WMV)
- QuickTime (MOV, MP4, M4V) (available for customers using AxisTV v.7.0.22 and higher)

16.1.8 Audio Files
The Manage Audio Files screen allows you to manage the audio files available for use in bulletins and as background audio on Channel Players. The options you are given on this screen depend upon your privileges, as established by the system administrator.

Note: AxisTV does not contain any pre-loaded audio files. This screen will not contain any files or options for managing files until the user has uploaded audio files to AxisTV.

- Click the link provided link to upload an audio files
- Upload up to ten (10) Audio files at once with this page, as long as the total file size does not exceed 20 MB.
- You must specify a name/description for each file that you upload. This name/description is used when creating or modifying bulletins or displays.
- Click Upload Now to finish.

Note: Use the AxisTV Media Importer to upload a file or multiple files that exceed 20 MB. The AxisTV Media Importer allows files totaling up to 1.99 gigabytes in a single import. Audio files are automatically filed in the Manage | Audio Files screen.

- Once a user has uploaded audio files, the following options will be available:
  - Enter or change file name in text box
  - Delete audio file
  - Preview audio file

Audio files can be uploaded if they have any of the following formats:
- MP3 (MP3)
- Wave File (WAV)
16.1.9 Background Library

The Manage Background Library screen allows you to manage the backgrounds and wallpapers available for use in the entire system. The options you are given on this screen depend upon your privileges, as established by the system administrator. These files are used with all bulletins (text, free form, news, weather, event schedules, etc…) and as wallpaper images on Channel Player Display Layouts when using background images to appear behind content blocks and overlays.

AxisTV includes default sets of backgrounds and wallpapers. Users may choose to use the system defaults or upload their own backgrounds and wallpapers with custom designs.

AxisTV Theme packs are included on systems using AxisTV v.7.0.22 and higher. Users may download a variety of AxisTV Theme Packs at http://visixforum.com

Each Theme pack includes:
- 4 Layout wallpapers with layout templates for easy configuration
- 47 Background designed exclusively to match the theme

Folder Options

Available for customers using AxisTV v.7.0.22 and higher

You may create user-defined folders to arrange your backgrounds, such as File Type, file size or category (i.e. Athletics Backgrounds; HR Backgrounds;)

Upload Background Files

- Click the link provided to upload a one or multiple background images:
- Upload up to five (5) background files at once with this page. The total file upload should not exceed 10 MB.
- You must specify a name/description of each file that you upload. This name/description is used when creating or modifying bulletins or channel player display layouts
- Choose the primary aspect ratio for which you plan to use the background/wallpaper image.
- Click Upload Now
Manage Background Image Files:

- Click red “x” to delete
  - If background is set as a default bulletin background or if the background image is currently associated with an existing bulletin, it cannot be deleted
  - See CONFIGURE: Content Settings/Text and Template Settings to set defaults for auto-generating bulletins.
- Change name
  - Enter text into text box and click change name
- Create new aspect ratio version
  - Click create button to create new version
  - See CONFIGURE: Content Settings/Aspect Ratios to set aspect ratio options
  - Click red “x” to delete
17 Schedule – v.7.0.x – 7.0.17

Please refer to section 17.3 for scheduling instructions using v.7.0.19 and higher

17.1.1 My Content

Schedule content, already created, for delivery at specific time and date to relevant Channel Players.

- Choose folder
- Create folder: enter folder name
- Bulletin options
  - Select bulletin(s) checkbox
  - Edit bulletin: moves back to bulletin creation screen
  - Delete: deletes bulletin from system
    o If bulletin is currently scheduled, it must be removed from the schedule (Now Playing) before it can be deleted from the system
    o Delete all unscheduled bulletins - Deletes all bulletins belonging to the selected user that aren't currently scheduled on any playlists for any endpoints.
- Schedule bulletin
  - Verify title
  - Choose playlist(s) and/or playlist group(s)
  - Select publishers with checkboxes
    o To schedule ONLY to publishers, check “skip playlists” checkbox.
      ▪ Choose distribution list(s)
      ▪ Set publish date and time
      ▪ Repeat checkbox
      ▪ Choose ending date
      ▪ Choose days
      ▪ Set number of times per day
      ▪ Set interval
      ▪ Cancel: cancels your bulletin
      ▪ Finished: completes scheduling
- Show options
  o Today
    ▪ Checkbox
    ▪ Choose duration
  o From
    ▪ Choose start date and time
    ▪ Choose end date and time
  o Override local time zones option
  o Select and/or enter pace in seconds
- Cancel: cancels your bulletin
- Finished: completes scheduling
17.2 My Tickers

Schedule tickers, already created, for delivery at specific time and date to relevant Channel Players.

- Choose folder
- Create folder: enter folder name
- Choose crawls for category
- Crawl options
  - Select crawl(s) checkbox
  - Edit crawl: moves back to crawl creation screen
  - Delete: deletes crawl from system
    - If crawl is currently scheduled, it must be removed from the schedule before it can be deleted from the system
    - Delete all unscheduled tickers - Deletes all tickers belonging to the selected user that aren't currently scheduled on any crawllists for any endpoints.
  - Schedule crawl
    - Verify text
    - Choose crawllist(s) and/or crawllist group(s)
    - Show options
      - Today
        - Checkbox
        - Choose duration
      - From
        - Choose start date and time
        - Choose end date and time
      - Override local time zones option
    - Display options
      - All day long
      - From and To
        - Choose start date and time
        - Choose end date and time
    - Override local time zones option
    - Cancel: cancels your crawl
    - Finished: completes scheduling
17.3 Schedule – v.7.0.19 and higher

AxisTV v.7.0.17 and higher includes a new feature that allows a user to schedule a bulletin/ticker to repeat on specific days of the week and for one or more time periods each day. This feature is referred to as “Daypart Interval” in the AxisTV web interface. The maximum amount of daypart intervals is 24.

17.3.1 My Content

Schedule content, already created, for delivery at specific time and date to relevant Channel Players.

Folder Options:

- Choose folder
- Create folder: enter folder name

Bulletin Options:

- Select bulletin(s) checkbox
- Edit bulletin: moves back to bulletin creation screen
- Delete: deletes bulletin from system
- If bulletin is currently scheduled, it must be removed from the schedule (Now Playing) before it can be deleted from the system
- Delete all unscheduled bulletins - Deletes all bulletins belonging to the selected user that aren't currently scheduled on any playlists for any endpoints.
- Schedule bulletin

Schedule Bulletin Options:

Schedule Bulletin to Endpoint

The Schedule Bulletin to Endpoint screen allows you to schedule a group of bulletins to Channel Players, Media Appliances, Desktop Messenger and Text Messenger. The options that are available are based on licensing.

Depending upon the options available and the options you select, the schedule bulletin workflow will take you to the following screens, in this order:

- Schedule Bulletin to Playlist
- Schedule Bulletin to Content List
- Schedule Bulletin to Publisher
Choose one or multiple playlists from the playlist window.

*Important Note:* If you have access to manage content for multiple modes of play (i.e. Normal and Alert), you may only select one or more playlists from the same mode of play when scheduling content.

You may choose one or more Playlist Group(s) instead of selecting play lists if they are available and you have the privilege to schedule to playlist groups.

- You can choose to start showing the bulletin Today for a specific amount of time OR you can choose a start and end date and time.

- You can also choose to have the bulletin play on a specific day or days within the chosen start and end date and time Normally the start and stop dates and times are figured for each display, but if you check Override Local Time Zones then only the central AxisTV server's time will be used.

- You can choose to display the bulletin all day long OR from specific start to stop time intervals each day. The maximum number of Daypart Intervals for one day is 24. Normally the start and stop dates and times are figured for each display, but if you check Override Local Time Zones then only the central AxisTV server's time will be used.

- If the system is licensed for Playback Tracking, you can elect to record the playback times for a bulletin as scheduled on the play list.

- You can control the amount of time that each bulletin is displayed by letting the system calculate a pace based on the amount of text OR by specifying a number of seconds yourself. The calculated pace is based on the number of words per second specified in the owning Aspect Ratio. The system administrator can adjust this value.

- If you do not wish to schedule the bulletin at this time you can click Cancel. The bulletin is already saved and is available via My Bulletins. If you do want to schedule the bulletin given your settings then click Finished.
18 Configure

18.1.1 Mass Alert Notification

Note: Mass Alert Notification is available for customers using AxisTV v.7.0.22 and higher. This feature is licensed separately. Please contact your Visix sales representative to purchase this feature.

- **Ignore Alert Priority**: Checking this box will allow the system to ignore Alert Priority when processing multiple alert triggers.

- **Alert Type**: A letter is used to represent the Name and Type of alert.
- **Alert Name**: The following Alert Types, Names and Modes are prepackaged with the AxisTV installer:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Play Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>General Alert</td>
<td>GeneralAlert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Fire</td>
<td>Fire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>Severe Weather</td>
<td>Weather</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>Acts of Violence</td>
<td>Violence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Earthquake</td>
<td>Earthquake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>Safety</td>
<td>Safety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td>Rescue</td>
<td>Rescue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>Public Health</td>
<td>PublicHealth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>Pollution</td>
<td>Pollution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>Transportation</td>
<td>Transportation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>Infrastructure (includes cyber threats)</td>
<td>Infrastructure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Mass Destruction</td>
<td>MassDestruction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Alert Priority**: Order in which the Mass Alerts are to be shown based on the importance level of mass alert (1 is highest priority).
- **Play Mode**: The mode is the type to be used by the system in response to the Mass Alert Notification being triggered.
- **Replace Text Flag**: Check this box if you wish the last mass alert notification text to replace the default text.
- **Alert Style**: Choose the style of the alert text - none (default), scroll (playing across the screen, right to left) and blink (text will blink on and off).
- **Default Dwell**: The time (in seconds) that the Mass Alert Notification plays before repeating. NOTE: Caution must be taken when using the Alert Type 'Scroll'. The Dwell time must be set to allow for the entire message to play before repeating.
- **Default Text**: This is the default mass alert notification text that will play when activated. It can be changed at time of activation.
- **Last Alert Text**: If text was added/changed/modified when you activated a Mass Alert, the last text entered will show here.
- **Reset**: If you wish to reset the Alert Types that came with your system to their default settings, you can use the button. Warning - Pressing this button will permanently delete any and all information you have changed for these types.
Email: For Email Mass Alert Notification Configuration, enter the following required information: a valid Pop Server account, its password and the Mass Alert Type you wish to assign to this e-mail address. The From Address can be used if the e-mail address you wish to use is a different from the original. The e-mail address will need to also be added under a User which you can configure this by going to Configure | Security | Users.

Activation
- After configuring Mass Alert Notifications, you will be able to activate the system by going to the Welcome menu in the AxisTV web interface.
- To enable one of the C.A.P. compliant alerts, click the ‘Activate Mass Alert Notification’ button and choose the Mass Alert Type, add additional text (if necessary) and click on ‘Enable Mass Alert’.

With your AxisTV system set in Mass Alert notification mode, you will not be able to access the regular User Interface. Non-Administrator users will receive the notice “Mass Alert Notification Mode is on.” Administrators will see “Mass Alert Notification Activated” along with the following:

- Current Alert – This states which mass alert is currently being used by the system.
- Last Alert Message – This shows the last (if any) message that was used for this Alert Type that was manually entered. It will not show the default message text.
- Alert Text – This field is for either adding or replacing alert text.
- Append Message – If you want to add additional information to your Mass Alert Text, simply add to the message and click on this button.
- Replace Message – If you want to replace the current Mass Alert Text message, write in your new mass alert text and click on this button.
- Disable Mass Alert – Clicking this button will turn off the Mass Alert and return your system to its normal operating mode.

The Mass Alert Notification will continue until an intentional action is taken to stop it. This interaction can be prompted by an authorized user through a specially designed screen, a cancellation or expiration date by a third party through CAP, or a cancellation by a third party through a previously defined web service.
18.1.2 News Adapter

There are two possible sources for creating news bulletins and news tickers; both require licenses:

2. The RSS Feed Adapter enables you to pull data from text-based RSS feeds to be displayed as bulletins or tickers.

18.1.2.1 Visix News Service

The Configure Visix News Service screen allows you to configure the News Adapter service that regularly retrieves news articles from the Visix News Server. Once the articles are copied to the AxisTV database, the AxisTV News Plug-in auto-updates any news bulletins and tickers created using the Visix news web server.

18.1.2.2 RSS Feeds

The Configure | RSS Feeds option allows you to configure the News Adapter service that regularly retrieves news articles from an unlimited number of RSS feeds. Once the article feeds are added to the AxisTV database, the AxisTV News Plug-in auto-updates any news bulletins and tickers created with the RSS feeds.

1. Go to Configure | News | RSS News Feed in the AxisTV Web Interface
2. Specify the full path to the RSS feed.
3. Enter an update interval in minutes. You can specify any value greater than 0. Recommended values include 15, 30 and 60. This controls how frequently the News Adapter reads the RSS feed and extract articles from it. Note that bulletins are redrawn based on the regeneration interval specified in Content Settings - News Plug-in, not on the refresh interval on this screen.
4. All articles must be assigned a category. You can choose an existing category or type a new category name in the space provided.
5. Enter a number for the age of the articles (in days). (i.e. 5 will return articles published within the last 5 days).
6. A filter limits the articles that are returned. This is optional. You can enter a word or phrase, in part or in whole, that must be found in the title. Lists are not allowed.
7. Enter the number of articles to be imported (i.e. 10)
8. Click the Add button to save the new RSS Feed. Your screen will change to reflect the save and you will now see a Change button in place of Add; a delete button and an Import Now button.
9. Click the Import Now button

10. If the import is successful, you will be shown all the articles that were imported.

- You may now go to Create | News Bulletin or Create | News Ticker to create a bulletin or ticker using the newly added RSS feed(s).
18.1.3 **Stock Adapter**

18.1.3.1 **Current Values**
- Choose existing stock(s)
- Add stock symbol details
  - Stock symbol
  - Name
  - Share price
  - As of
  - Price change
  - Trading volume
- Click update to populate data

18.1.3.2 **Hyperfeed Adapter**
- Enable auto import checkbox
- Input update interval
- Type in URL of stock source
- Include or Exclude stock symbols
  - Use arrow tools to move criteria between columns
  - Highlight single criteria or hold and highlight groups
  - Use double arrow tools to move all criteria in a column
- Click import now to populate stock data
- Preview stock data
- Back: returns to previous page
- Finished: completes stock update

18.1.3.3 **Text Adapter**
- Enable auto text import checkbox
- Enter update interval
- Type file path of stock data
- Click import now to populate stock data
- Click upload with browser to reference Web
  - Preview stock data
- Back: returns to previous page
- Upload now: uploads data
- Finished: completes text import

18.1.4 **Event Schedule**

Configure the schedule display adapter to retrieve and display content of your choice via the Web, LAN or WAN.
18.1.4.1 Dean Evans Adapter
Requires the user to have data access to the Dean Evans application.

- Database settings – click connect
- Set interval
- Set version
- Enter location
- Set Authentication
  - Set ID and password
- Include customer name
- Import event settings
- Include or Exclude Rooms, Statuses and Types
  - Use arrow tools to move criteria between columns
  - Highlight single criteria or hold and highlight groups
  - Use double arrow tools to move all criteria in a column
- Finished: completes event schedule import

18.1.4.2 Delphi® Adapter
Requires the user to have data access to the Delphi® application.

- Enabled checkbox
- Set refresh interval
- Set version
- Enter location
- Verify file
- Import now
  - Preview event data
- Finished: completes event schedule import

18.1.4.3 CEO® Adapter
Requires the user to have data access to the CEO® application.

- Database settings – click connect
- Set interval
- Set version
- Enter location
- Set Authentication
  - Set ID and password
- Include site name
- Include client name
- Set if no client criteria
- Import event settings
- Include or Exclude Rooms, Statuses and Types
  - Use arrow tools to move criteria between columns
  - Highlight single criteria or hold and highlight groups
  - Use double arrow tools to move all criteria in a column
- Finished: completes event schedule import
18.1.4.4 Text Adapter
Allows the user to establish the parameters for using the periodic text import tools.

- Choose file layout criteria
- Type in file location
- Set delimiter
- Set one-time import criteria
- Set columns
- Click import now to populate event data
- Click upload with browser to reference Web
- Finished: completes text import

18.1.4.5 Periodic Text Import
Automatically imports text data from a specific file location.

- Choose file layout
- Choose file location
- Enable auto text import checkbox
- Set update interval
- Finished: completes text import
18.1.4.6 Exchange Server Adapter

The Microsoft® Exchange® Support Option imports event schedules from one or more Microsoft® Exchange® 2003 public folder calendars throughout the day without user intervention. Once event schedule data is imported, it can be displayed using Event Schedule bulletins that allow you to create a group of bulletins that are automatically refreshed to display current or future events.

Hardware:
No additional hardware is required to support this feature.

Software:
- The Microsoft® Exchange® Support Option was introduced in AxisTV 6.0.
- Customers must be running AxisTV version 6.0 or greater.
- The customer must have Microsoft® Exchange® 2003 running and configured on their network.
- The Exchange® Server Adapter connects directly to the Exchange® server, which must be have IIS and WebDAV configured.
- The customer's Exchange® Administrator must provide a user account that has high privileges to access the calendars.

Licensing:
The Microsoft® Exchange® Support Option (SDE) is licensed on a per system basis.
- If SDE is purchased at the same time the initial system is purchased, it will be activated automatically when the Content Server is initialized.
- If SDE is purchased later, the licensing must be activated manually using the License Manager utility located on the Content Server. An SDE license file (Exchange® Adapter.lic) will be e-mailed to the customer.

Configuration:
- Configuration of the Microsoft® Exchange® Support Option is done via the Web interface, on the Configure | Event Schedule | Exchange® Server Adapter.
- Microsoft® Exchange® 2003 public folder calendars are found by using their WebDAV URLs.
- The appropriate security scheme (Basic, Digest, NTLM, or Kerberos) must be specified, based on the type of authority the customer is using.

Each calendar is accessed using the credentials supplied by the customer's Exchange® Administrator.
18.1.5 **Weather Adapter**
Configure the weather adapter to retrieve and display content of your choice via the Web from NOAA. This is a multi-step process detailed below.

18.1.5.1 **Current Conditions**
- Choose location
- Choose weather summary
- Enter temperature
- Enter humidity
- Choose wind direction
- Enter wind speed
- Select “as of” date and time
- Save: completes current conditions

18.1.5.2 **Forecast Conditions**
- Choose location
- Choose date
- Choose weather summary
- Enter high temperature
- Enter low temperature
  - Use range (ignore temperatures) checkbox
    - Enter high range
    - Enter low range
- Save: completes forecast conditions

18.1.5.3 **Locations**
- Add or delete locations
  - Enter location name and/or description
  - Choose current location
  - Click add or delete

18.1.5.4 **Icons**
- Choose icons for condition name
- Preview icons
- Save: completes icon choices
18.1.5.5 Zones
- Choose existing zone to edit or delete
- Enter state or province
- Enter zone number
- Enter description
- Click add/change or delete

18.1.5.6 Location Zone Map
- Choose location
- Choose weather service zone
- Click link to find zone city name
- Map options
  - Pull current conditions
  - Pull forecast
- Map or unmap choice
- Enter high temperature
- Enter low temperature
  - Use range (ignore temperatures) checkbox
    o Enter high range
    o Enter low range
- Save: completes forecast conditions

18.1.5.7 Download Now
- Choose location
- Click download
18.1.6 Screen Saver Plug-in
Establishes the refresh parameters for the screen saver plug-in that delivers still image content to individual PCs as screen savers.

- Set regeneration interval
- Set minimum poll interval
- Verify total clients allowed
- Auto add clients choice
- Add clients
  - Enter client name
  - Click add
- Delete clients
  - Choose client
  - Click delete

18.1.7 Security
A number of security policies are addressed below that include passwords, intrusion policies, users and user roles. Only individuals with an understanding of how these policies impact overall network security, network access and publishing rights should address these items.

18.1.7.1 Security Policy
- Set password rules
  - Minimum length
  - Maximum length
  - Auto expire criteria
  - Enforce password history
- Set strong password rules
  - Require upper/lower case
  - Set total numbers required in password
  - Set special characters
- Enforce password history
  - Set lockout threshold
  - Set lockout time span
  - Auto expire criteria
- Enforce password history
  - Set default password
  - Set default expiration
- Set policy completes policy set up

18.1.7.2 Intrusion Policy
- View intruders
- Manually clear lockout
18.1.7.3 Users

**Note:** Prior to adding new users to AxisTV, you should first consider the role the user will fulfill. You may need to create new roles or adjust existing roles in the system via the System | Manage Roles screen.

Once you've decided what role(s) the user will play and what playlists and crawllists they should access you can add them to the system.

**To add a new user to AxisTV:**

- In the space provided next to “Add User”, type the username and click the “Add” button

- By default, all playlists and crawllists appear in the “Excluded” column for new users. You may assign which playlists and crawllists the user may access by moving them into the “Included” column
  - Use arrow tools to move criteria between columns
  - Highlight single criteria or hold and highlight groups using the control key on your keyboard
  - Use double arrow tools to move all criteria in a column

- Assign a default playlist for the user
  - The default playlist determines which playlist automatically highlighted on the bulletin scheduling page, although the user may schedule to other playlists if they have access to additional playlists as determined by an administrator.
  - The default playlist also determines where an email bulletin submission from the user appears if the email bulletin plug-in is activated and configured for the user.
  - The default playlist must be in the same operating mode as the default crawllist

- Assign a default crawllist for the user
  - Use arrow tools to move criteria between columns
  - The default crawllist must be in the same operating mode as the default playlist

- Enter email address for the user
  - AxisTV is capable of generating e-mail for notification and accepting bulletins from e-mail.
  - To enable these features you must enter the actual e-mail address of the user in the space provided. If you do not, the system will ignore all e-mail from the user and will not send the user any e-mail.

- Assign a role (set of privileges) for the user.
  - Please refer to the Configure | Security | Roles section below for detailed information regarding roles

**To edit setting for an existing user:**

- Choose the username from the drop-down menu located next to “Settings For”
- You may edit settings for the user and click “Apply Changes” to save

**To delete a user from AxisTV:**

- Choose the username from the drop-down menu located next to “Settings For”
- Click Delete
- A confirmation message will appear on the screen “Are you sure you want to delete the user [username is displayed]?"
- Click “Yes” to Delete the user or Click “No” to abort the deletion process.
18.1.7.4 Roles
- Choose privileges for target
  - Click delete to delete target
- Add role
  - Enter role label
  - Enter role description
  - Click add
- Include or Exclude privileges associated with role
  - Use arrow tools to move criteria between columns
  - Highlight single criteria or hold and highlight groups
  - Use double arrow tools to move all criteria in a column

18.1.8 Content Settings
The Configure Content Settings screen allows you to configure the major content creation attributes of the AxisTV installation, along with the behavior of major services and plugins.

- Verify DNS Name/Address or enter a new name/address if the DNS name has been modified.
- Verify or change the content server description
  - Click the change button if you modify a DNS option

- Playlists
  - Enter name
  - Choose whether playlist is public
  - Click change or add

- Playlist groups (Enterprise licensed feature)
  - Choose playlists for
    - Click delete to delete target
  - Add groups
    - Enter group name
    - Enter group description
    - Click add
      - Include or Exclude playlists
    - Use arrow tools to move criteria between columns
    - Highlight single criteria or hold and highlight groups
    - Use double arrow tools to move all criteria in a column
- **Crawllists**
  - Enter name
  - Select speed
  - Select background color
  - Set text formatting
  - Click change or add
  - Click change or add

- **Crawllist groups (Enterprise licensed feature)**
  - Choose crawllist for
    - Click delete to delete target
  - Add groups
    - Enter group name
    - Enter group description
    - Click add
  - Include or Exclude crawllists
  - Use arrow tools to move criteria between columns
  - Highlight single criteria or hold and highlight groups
  - Use double arrow tools to move all criteria in a column

- **Text and template settings**
  - Choose default background for text bulletins
  - Choose default background for text w/title bulletins
  - Outline and shadow text options
  - Click change

- **Aspect Ratios**
  - Enter name
  - Enter or change width and height
  - Enter or change max lines
  - Choose word pacing
  - Click change or add

- **Play modes**
  - Enter mode name
  - Enter mode description
  - Click add

- **Web title**
  - Enter Web title
  - Click change

- **Boot schedule**
  - Choose day of week
  - Choose time of day
    - Override local time zone option
  - Click change
  - Click boot now to boot system

- **SMTP settings**
  - Enter or change server name/address
  - Enter or change SMTP port
  - Click change
• Email plug-in
  • Set active option
  • Set poll interval
  • Set POP criteria
  • Set password criteria
  • Set title and body text formatting
  • Set defaults
  • Choose backgrounds
  • Click save plug-in settings

• Event management plug-in
  • Set regeneration interval
  • Set default background
  • Set default aspect ratio
  • Set default audio
  • Click save plug-in settings

• News plug-in
  • Set regeneration interval
  • Set default background
  • Set default aspect ratio
  • Set default audio
  • Click save plug-in settings

• Weather plug-in
  • Set regeneration interval
  • Set default background
  • Use passive FTP option
  • Set default aspect ratio
  • Set default audio
  • Enter weather service DNS
  • Enter forecast directory
  • Click save plug-in settings

• Stock plug-in
  • Enter regeneration interval
  • Click save plug-in settings

• Channel Player Snapshots (AxisTV v.7.0.21 and higher)
  • The fetch rate (or time that the system will automatically take another snapshot) is set to 60 minutes.
  • You may change this setting in the space provided and applying the new rate by clicking the **Save Snapshot Settings** button

  **Important:** The minimum time that can be set for automatic fetch is 15 minutes.
18.1.9 Channel Players

Enables users to manipulate virtually every aspect of the Channel Players output. See Configuring the Screen Layout section for more information on creating content blocks, floating date and time and Video/Stream Windows.

18.1.9.1 Current Settings – v.7.0.1 – v.7.0.8

*If you are using v.7.0.9 and higher, please skip Current Settings and refer to Section 14.9.9: Hardware – v.7.0.9 and higher.

The Current Settings Screen enables users to configure and change the screen layout of the Channel Player.

- Choose Channel Player
  - Enter or change name/address
  - Enter or change description
  - Click add to add a new player
  - Click change to change player
  - Click delete to delete player
  - Click refresh to refresh player
  - Click reboot to reboot player
  - Click shut down to shut down player

- Channel Player groups
  Channel player groups available only with Enterprise Edition software. Allows users to configure the screen layout for multiple Channel Players at once.
  - Select group(s)
  - Apply settings (checkboxes)
  - Click apply to apply settings
  - Click refresh to refresh group
  - Click reboot to reboot group
  - Click shut down to shut down group

- Modes
  - Choose mode
  - Add mode
  - Select background audio
  - Select background image
  - Floating date and time
    - Set position and formatting
    - Click change
  - Content blocks
    - Choose playlist and crawllist
    - Enter position
    - Click change, remove or add
  - Video window or Stream window
    - Video window enabled
    - Select video source
    - Enter position
    - Click update

- Rendition
  - Choose aspect ratio
  - Choose mode
  - Enter max number of lines
  - Enter refresh rate
  - Click apply rendition

- Player resolution
  - Enter horizontal resolution
  - Enter vertical resolution
  - Scale content blocks checkbox
  - Click update
18.1.10 Layouts

Enables multiple layouts to be displayed on a single Channel Player at different days/times as specified. See Configuring the Screen Layout section for more information on creating content blocks, floating date and time and Video/Stream Windows.

- Add a new layout
  - Select Channel Player
  - Enter Layout Name
  - Click Add Layout
  - Choose Display Mode
  - Choose Background Audio
  - Choose Aspect Ratio
  - Configure Floating Date and Time if applicable
  - Configure Content Blocks (see section on Configuring the Screen Layout for more detailed instructions)
  - Click Apply to Player to apply immediately
  - Click Schedule to Schedule specific date(s) and time

- Change an existing layout
  - Select Channel Player
  - Select Layout Name
  - Make changes to layout
  - Click Change at each row changed
  - Configure Content Blocks (see section on Configuring the Screen Layout for more detailed instructions)
  - Click Apply to Player to apply layout immediately
  - Click Schedule to Schedule specific date(s) and time

- Delete an existing layout
  - Select Channel Player
  - Select Layout Name
  - Click Delete
  - Note: Layout must be removed from the schedule before it can be deleted

18.1.10.1 Layout Schedule

Enables users to view the Layout schedule per day and per Channel Player and edit layouts and schedules.

- Select Channel Player
- Check Day(s) of week to view scheduled Layouts
- Select Layout(s)
- Edit Layout
- Remove Layout from schedule
- Edit Layout Schedule
18.1.10.2 Groups

The Channel Player Group Mode screen allows you set the active mode on several or all players at once. The Channel Player Groups feature is available for Enterprise licensed systems.

Player Group

Each group is represented by a line on the screen. The CURRENT MODE for the entire group is NOT displayed because different players can have different current modes, even though they are members of a group.

The system-defined group "All Players" is a shortcut for activating the same mode on all players, regardless of the actual group memberships.

For each player group, you can select a new mode. The modes that are available are dependent upon the modes defined in your system.

Once you've selected a new mode you can activate it.

The newly activated mode is displayed in the Activated Mode column.

Activated Mode

This column is blank unless you activate new modes. The new modes become effective on the players based on the rules of distribution for the Content Publisher. Modes are treated just like any other content for the purposes of distribution - they are not handled in a special way.

18.1.10.3 Group Mode

This menu option is visible only when the installation is licensed as an Enterprise installation. Group Mode provides the ability to activate a specific mode on a set of players at once, rather than one player at a time.

Every installation has a built-in group called "All Players" that can be used to activate a play mode on all players at once. In order to activate only some players, you will need to create groups by using the Configure | Channel Players | Groups screen.

The Group Mode screen does not show the currently activated mode on every group since the players within the group can have different active modes at the same time.

When a new mode on a player group is activated, the players within the group are all updated on the Content Manager/Server.
18.1.11 Hardware – v.7.0.9 and higher

*Please note the “hardware” screen is only available to customers using v.7.0.9 and higher. If you are using a version prior to v.7.0.9, please refer to Section 13: Channel Players*

Configure | Channel Players | Hardware allows you to add, change and remove Channel Player hardware from the installation. It also lets you refresh content, reboot and shutdown individual or multiple players.

The actions can be applied to a single player or multiple players, based on how many Select boxes you check.

18.1.11.1 Add Channel Player

The “Add” Channel Player allows you to register a player with the Content Manager/Server. This registration is necessary so that the Content Manager/Server knows the dimensions of the player’s viewing area and can send it content. You can only add a player that already has AxisTV software installed on it.

- **Enter the Network (DNS) Name or IP address** of the Channel Player you wish to add to the Content Manager/Server. It is preferable to use DNS names rather than addresses. If you are unsure what to enter please consult your network administrator for assistance.

- **Enter a Friendly Name for the player.** This is the name you will see from the AxisTV screens and will be used when referring to the server. Names are limited to 255 characters.

- **Enter the Telnet Port** on which the player listens for remote commands. The default value is 6500. If you are unsure what to enter please consult your network administrator for assistance.

- **Click Finished** to add the player, otherwise click Cancel.

- If the add succeeds then you will be returned to the Configure Channel Players screen and the new player will be available in the list for configuration. If there are any problems contacting the player they will be recorded in the status and error logs (System | Status and System | Errors).
18.1.11.2 Edit Values or Delete Players

By default, you can sort Channel Players by device name or you can sort by description and DNS name/address.

- Enter the name of the device, which is typically the computer name.
- Enter a useful description that tells you where the player is located or what function it serves (i.e. Lobby player 1 or main conference room)
- Enter the **DNS Name/Address** or network identity of the player hardware.
- Enter the **Telnet Port** (TCP port) on which the player listens for commands. The factory default value is 6500.

- Enter the width of the display surface that the player will use. The initial value is gathered during Add Channel Player; however the value can be edited here. The value should match the actual Channel Player resolution to prevent visual anomalies.
- Enter the height of the display surface that the player will use. The initial value is gathered during Add Channel Player; however the value can be edited here. The value should match the actual Channel Player resolution to prevent visual anomalies.
- If the Channel Player has a video window card installed (either Video Capture or Tuner Card) you can select it from the list. This screen will enforce the maximum number of video window cards allowed, based on the license count.
- If you want the Channel Player to play streamed video content you can designate a stream window by checking the box. This screen will enforce the maximum number of video window allowed, based on the license count.

**Important Note:** Changes to hardware must be applied one player at a time.

- Delete offers a confirmation before actually deleting the player from the installation
18.1.11.3 Layouts

The Configure Channel Players Layout screen provides a way to view, apply and schedule layouts that are defined for Channel Players. Every Channel Player has at least one layout defined for each Play Mode. The options available on the screen are based on the configuration of the web server.

**Channel Player** – When you select a Channel Player from the list, the layout list is refreshed automatically and the currently applied layout is selected automatically.

**Layout** - The selected layout depends upon the current play mode selected for the player. "Normal" mode supports multiple layouts, while all other modes are limited to 1 layout each.

**Actions** - The actions you can take with the selected layout vary based on the type of layout and the web server configuration.

- **Generate Stock Layouts** - You can generate stock layouts, the layouts that are shipped with AxisTV, to the Channel Player at any time. This is useful if you add a player then designate a video window, you can regenerate the stock layouts to get the layouts that include a video window.

- **Add Custom layouts** - You can add new custom layouts using a WYSIWYG editor from within the web application if your web server is configured to support smart clients. Otherwise the 'Add Custom Layouts' button will not be displayed and you will need to download and install the AxisTV Display Layout Editor onto your PC. You can find this utility in the System Tools | Install Layout Editor screen.

- **Edit** - You can edit existing layouts using a WYSIWYG editor from within the web application if your web server is configured to support smart clients. Otherwise the 'Edit' button will not be displayed and you will need to download and install the AxisTV Display Layout Editor onto your PC. You can find this utility in the System Tools | Install Layout Editor screen.

- **Schedule** - You can schedule a layout to play at certain times, as long as the layout is associated with the "Normal" play mode. All other modes only support 1 layout, so there can be no schedule. Scheduling is actually handled by the Schedule Layout screen.

- **Add to Player** - You can apply a layout to a player immediately, as long as the layout is associated with the "Normal" play mode. All other modes only support 1 layout - and they are always applied to the player.
Layout Properties

**Name** - You can change the display name of the layout using the supplied dialog:

**Aspect ratio** - You can choose the aspect ratio - changing the aspect ratio does not change the physical dimensions of the layout.

**Display resolution** - You can quickly change the dimensions of the layout with one of three options:

- Match the current display resolution
- Select from the drop-down list of popular / common resolutions
- Enter a resolution manually

The dialog assumes you want to scale the content blocks and overlays, but you can disable scaling before clicking OK.

**Content Blocks** - Each defined content block is represented in this list. P block are playlists, T blocks are tickers, VFO are video feed overlays, VSO are video stream overlays and DTO are date time overlays. Each block's placement is in pixels.

**Preview** - The preview thumbnail demarks the content blocks using the same designations as the Content Blocks section, so you can easily match details to the visual representation.

*Note:* All overlay windows are drawn half-transparent in the preview so that you can see if a regular content block lies below them. You can view a full-size preview by clicking the image.

**Wallpaper** – You can select wallpaper from the drop down menu or via the wallpaper browser. You can also opt not to choose a wallpaper. The Aspect Ratio is displayed before the wallpaper name in the list. You are free to choose wallpaper with any aspect ratio because wallpaper is always stretched across the entire layout surface.

**Background Audio** - You can select no background audio, or an audio by name. When you select an audio for the layout a speaker appears in the bottom-right corner of the layout's preview (only in the WYSIWYG editor).

**Transitions Enabled** - If necessary you can disable transitions for the layout. This is useful for constrained player hardware.
18.1.11.4 Content Blocks and Overlays

When you start editing a layout the WYSIWYG area assumes you want to add a new content block or overlay. If there are any existing overlays present in the layout, there will an add button, a select top button and a select bottom button. When overlays are present all content blocks are on the lower layer (behind) and all overlays are in the upper layer (front).

Add Button and Select Button

When no overlays are present there will be an add button and a simple select button.

- When you are in select mode and mouse over the existing content blocks and overlays their boundaries glow to indicate you can select them.
- Once a content block or overlay is selected sizing handles appear. You can click and drag the block around, and resize it.
- A speaker will be displayed in the lower-right corner when audio is associated with the layout.
- Overlays can be positioned directly over content blocks. The overlays are depicted as semi-transparent so that you can see the content blocks underlying them.
- Ticker blocks will use T, while playlist blocks will use P to assist in identifying the block. VFO is use for Video Feed Overlays, VSO for Video Stream Overlays and DTO for Date Time Overlays.

Adding a Block or Overlay

When you use the add block or overlay tool you should position the pointer in an area where a block or overlay can be added. Blocks cannot overlap one another but an overlay can overlap a block.

Your choices are constrained by licensing and what's already present in the layout.

It is typically easier to add the block or overlay in approximately the correct location then fine tune it with the mouse or edit the coordinates manually.
Selected Block or Overlay Details

Delete Block - You can delete any and all blocks and overlays, one at a time.

Placement / Apply - If you need to adjust the placement of a block or overlay manually you can type in the coordinate and click Apply.

Playlist - Content blocks can either be for playlists or tickers. The list of available playlists is already limited to the playlists on the same play mode as the layout.

Ticker - Content blocks can either be for playlists or tickers. The list of available tickers is already limited to the ticker son the same play mode as the layout.

Overlays – Overlays can be video streams, video feeds or floating date and time.

Select Video Streams to create a Video Stream Window.

Note: You must be licensed for streaming media in order to see and select a Video Stream

Select Video Feeds to create a standard Video Window using a video capture car.

Note: You must be licensed for Video Window in order to see and select a Video Feed
Note: Video Feeds that are based on Video Capture Cards will allow you to configure the physical line source for the video feed. Tuner cards don't need this option and don't show it.

Select Floating date and time to create a floating date or time or both. You can control the font, text height, color and alignment (left, center, right) of each element you include. To change the text height you must click Apply.

Edit - You can edit existing layouts using a WYSIWYG editor from within the web application if your web server is configured to support smart clients. Otherwise the 'Edit' button will not be displayed and you will need to download and install the AxisTV Display Layout Editor onto your PC. You can find this utility in the System Tools | Install Layout Editor screen

Schedule - You can schedule a layout to play at certain times, as long as the layout is associated with the "Normal" play mode. All other modes only support 1 layout, so there can be no schedule. Scheduling is actually handled by the Schedule Layout screen.

Apply to player - You can apply a layout to a player immediately, as long as the layout is associated with the "Normal" play mode. All other modes only support 1 layout - and they are always applied to the player

Summary - The Summary section displays high-level information about the selected layout. Note that Display Resolution indicates the resolution the layout expects, not the resolution currently applied to the display. The WYSIWYG editor allows you to very easily reconcile layout expectations to the actual display resolution.

Each defined content block is represented in this list. Each block’s placement is in pixels.

- P block are playlists
- T blocks are tickers
- VFO are video feed overlays
- VSO are video stream overlays
- DTO are date time overlays.
**Preview** - The preview thumbnail demarks the content blocks using the same designations as the Content Blocks section, so you can easily match details to the visual representation. You can view a full-size preview by clicking the image.

*Note that all overlay windows are drawn half-transparent in the preview so that you can see if a regular content block lies below them.*

### 18.1.11.5 Mass Alert Notification Layouts

The Administrator can make decisions about color in the Layout Editor for Mass Alert Notifications. Visix recommends that the default Mass Alert Notification Layouts not be changed as the canned content background is set specifically for the current location of the Alert content block (Bottom of Layout for Widescreen, Middle of Layout for Normal and Middle of Layout for Portrait aspect ratios).

- **Text Color**: This menu allows the user to change the text color of your Mass Alert Notification message.
- **BG Color**: This menu allows the user to change the background color of the Mass Alert Notification message.
- **Blink Color**: This menu allows the user to change the text color of your Mass Alert Notification message when the Alert Style is set to Blink.
- **Blink BG Color**: This menu allows the user to change the background color of the Mass Alert Notification when the Alert Style is set to Blink.
18.1.11.6 Layout Schedule

The Configure Channel Players Layout Schedule screen shows all the layouts scheduled on both the default and override timelines on the Channel Players. The override timeline is shown above the default timeline since the override takes higher precedence. You can use this screen to remove or edit the schedules. When using scheduled layouts, you should first create a default schedule layout.

- You can view the layout schedule for all players, but only for one player at a time. The day filter defaults to “today”, but you can check additional days if you wish.
- The default sort is first by start time, then time line, but you can sort by timeline first. Use the second sort to quickly assess holes in one of the timelines.
- You will see warnings if there are gaps within the default timeline for the next 30 days. You will also see warnings if there are any overlapping schedules in either the default or override timelines.

The Layout column displays the name of each scheduled layout and command buttons for editing the layout and removing it from the schedule. The override timeline schedules have a pale red background. Thumbnails are presented for each layout. You can view a full size preview by clicking the thumbnail.

The schedule column displays the date range, time span and days of the week on which the schedule applies and the timeline. The override timeline takes precedence over default timeline for the same moment in time. You can edit the schedule from this column, using the command.

- Select Edit Layout to change the layout
- Select Remove from schedule to remove the layout from the schedule
- Select Edit Schedule to change the days and/or times that the layout is scheduled
- Remove multiple layouts by selecting the “select for removal” box to remove multiple layouts from the schedule at once

18.1.11.7 Hardware Groups

This screen is available only if the Enterprise license is active in the installation

The Configure Channel Players Hardware Groups screen allows you to group multiple Channel Players for the purpose of taking actions across the entire group. You can define as many groups as necessary, but each Channel Player can be a member of only one group. You can edit the properties of an existing group or add a new group.

- When adding a new group, specify its name.
- When editing an existing group, the name is displayed but cannot be changed.
- When adding or editing you can enter or edit the description.
- Select “Save” to save a new group or changes to an existing group
- Select “Delete” to delete an existing group

The Included Channel Players list shows each Channel Player that can be added to the group. The Excluded Channel Players list shows the Channel Players that are not the group.

Note: Use the directional button to move players from the included list to the Excluded list and vice-versa.

Select the desired action buttons under Group Actions to Refresh Content, Reboot and Shutdown entire group. If one or more players cannot process the request you will be given a warning.
18.1.11.8 Group Mode

This menu option is visible only when the installation is licensed as an Enterprise installation. Group Mode provides the ability to activate a specific mode on a set of players at once, rather than one player at a time.

Every installation has a built-in group called “All Players” that can be used to activate a play mode on all players at once. In order to activate only some players, you will need to create groups by using the Configure | Channel Players | Groups screen.

The Group Mode screen does not show the currently activated mode on every group since the players within the group can have different active modes at the same time.

When a new mode on a player group is activated, the players within the group are all updated on the Content Manager/Server.

18.1.12 Desktop Messenger

Configures the Desktop Messenger application and the accompanying publishing engine.

The Desktop Messenger feature provides AxisTV bulletins as instant messages to any and all licensed PCs running the Desktop Messenger client software.

- Desktop distribution lists
  - Add or change the name of a distribution list
  - Click change
- Desktop publishers
  - Enter DNS
  - Enter port
  - Enter reserve
  - Click add

18.1.13 RSS Publishing

Configures the RSS Publishing application and the accompanying publishing engine.

- Enter update frequency interval
- Click change
- Assigned Web servers
  - Enter DNS
  - Enter port
  - Click add
18.1.14 Text Messenger

Configures the Text Messenger application and the accompanying publishing engine.

**Important Note:** Version 3 of the E2Campus product has eliminated the API that allows third parties, like Visix, to send messages to the e2Campus system. For our customers that use AxisTV text messenger functionality for sending messages from Visix to e2Campus, an upgrade to version 3 of the e2Campus software will disable the functionality. At this point e2Campus has no plans to re-enable this feature. Customers that have specific questions regarding the e2Campus changes in Version 3 should contact their e2Campus representative.

- Enter URL provided by Omnilert
- Enter Omnilert Account ID
- Enter Omnilert Channel ID
- Click update
- Click Refresh from provider to refresh available distribution lists

18.2 System Tools

18.2.1 Change Password

- Select user ID
- Enter password
- Reenter password
- Verify rules
- Cancel: cancels action
- Finished: saves new password

18.2.2 Change Mode

- Locate chosen player
- Choose new mode
- Click activate

18.2.3 Install AxisTV Desktop *(AxisTV v.7.0.18 and higher)*

AxisTV Desktop replaces three previous existing individual applications: Layout Editor, Media Importer, and Free Form Editor, and combines them into one application which may be installed onto the Content Manager or individual users’ computers. The AxisTV Desktop also includes a new feature called ‘Template Editor’ that allows users to create a Template that may be accessed through the AxisTV web interface to create a bulletin. *Note: Available to customers using AxisTV v.7.0.18 and higher.*
The AxisTV Desktop installer can be downloaded by going to System Tools | Install AxisTV Desktop.

- Double click on the link provided to run the executable file without saving it
  - Alternatively, you may choose to save the setup.exe file to your machine by clicking and selecting “Save Target As” and then double-click the set-up.exe file to run the file from your machine
- Run the InstallShield wizard, which will prompt you through the installation of the AxisTV Desktop application.
- The AxisTV Desktop Installer has been enhanced so that “Launch AxisTV Desktop” checkbox is already populated. This allows AxisTV Desktop to launch when “Finish” is clicked. Please refer to the AxisTV Feature Configuration Guide, Section 11, for detailed instructions on how to use AxisTV Desktop.
- AxisTV Desktop is configured for Active Directory integration into native host and when AD integration is not used, will remember user’s credentials and URLs. There is no longer a need to login and connect to a server each time. Note: Available to customers using v.7.0.18 and higher

18.2.4 Install Layout Editor (AxisTV v.7.0.9 – AxisTV v.7.0.17)

The Display Layout Editor is a WYSIWYG editor (What You See Is What You Get) that can create, copy, modify and delete layouts for Channel Players. This editor is available from the web browser if your web server is configured to enable smart clients. If not, in order to use the AxisTV Display Layout Editor on a PC you must install it.

- Right click the provided file link
- Choose Save As/Download from your browser pop-up menu to save the installation program on your C: drive.
- Once the installer has been downloaded, open the file (setup.exe) it to run the InstallShield wizard, which will prompt you through the installation of the AxisTV Layout Editor.
- Once you have completed installation, you can configure it using information given to you by the AxisTV Administrator.

18.2.5 Install Media Importer (AxisTV v.7.0.9 – AxisTV v.7.0.17)

The AxisTV Media Importer can import still images, audio files, video files, and backgrounds. To use the AxisTV Media Importer on your PC:

- Right click the provided file link
- Choose Save As/Download from your browser pop-up menu to save the installation program on your C: drive.
- Once the installer has been downloaded, open the file (setup.exe) it to run the InstallShield wizard, which will prompt you through the installation of the AxisTV Media Importer.
- Once you have completed installation, you can configure it using information given to you by the AxisTV Administrator.
18.2.6 Install AxisTV Free Form Editor (AxisTV v.7.0.9 – AxisTV v.7.0.17)
The AxisTV FreeForm Editor allows you to create and edit complex text and graphic messages.

- Right click the provided file link and choose Save As/Download from your browser pop-up menu to save the installation program on your desktop or C: drive.
- Once the installer has been downloaded, run it to install the AxisTV FreeForm Editor.
- You can now configure it using information given to you by the AxisTV Administrator.

18.2.7 Install AxisTV Desktop Messenger
The AxisTV Desktop Messenger allows you to deliver messages in the form of a pop-up window to every PC running the Desktop Messenger client application. Your system must be licensed for the AxisTV Desktop Messenger to use this application.

- Right click the provided file link and choose Save As/Download from your browser pop-up menu to save the installation program on your desktop or C: drive.
- Once the installer has been downloaded, run it to install the AxisTV Desktop Messenger client program.
- You can now configure it using information given to you by the AxisTV Administrator.

18.2.8 Install Screen Saver
The AxisTV Screen Saver application delivers message bulletins, graphics, event schedules, news bulletins, dynamic graphics and PowerPoint® slides to individuals PCs that have installed and launched the Screen Saver application

- Right click the provided link and choose Save As/Download from your browser pop-up menu to save the installation program on desktop or C: drive.
- Once the installer has been downloaded, run it to install the AxisTV Screen Saver client program.
- You can now configure it using information given to you by the AxisTV Administrator.

18.2.9 Active Alarms
- View active alarms
- Configure alarms
  - Enter email address for alarm service notification
  - Use checkboxes to configure alarms for each named condition
  - Click change after each configuration to save changes
18.2.10 Status Reports
- Review status reports
- Use provided links to save as text file(s)

18.2.11 Error Logs
- Choose device
- Click refresh
- View error logs
- Use provided links to save as text file(s)
- Use provide link to email Visix Support
19 Logout

- Click to logout of system

19.1 AxisTV Security

AxisTV security is implemented by means of individual user accounts with varying levels of role-based security. The user is only presented data and controls for which they have rights to manage.

19.1.1 Options

AxisTV has an internal security system or Enterprise users can choose to use ActiveDirectory for Authentication and/or Authorization.

19.1.2 AxisTV Internal Security

19.1.2.1 Factory Default Accounts

AxisTV systems come from the factory with two default user accounts. They are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Account Name</th>
<th>Password</th>
<th>Role</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>administrator</td>
<td>tech</td>
<td>System Administrator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>default</td>
<td>tech</td>
<td>Content Approver</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

19.1.2.2 Passwords

Passwords are managed from System Tools| Change Password. The minimum length is 1 character. There are no complexity requirements in AxisTV. If your network policies require strong passwords you will have to manage that manually. More information related to strong passwords and intrusion control can be found on page 53 of this document.

19.1.2.3 Role-based security explanation

Role-based security is a security model where users are granted access to features of the system based on the role with which they have been assigned. A role is essentially a definition of the tasks for which a user assigned that role is responsible.

A user of AxisTV performs actions upon AxisTV. Each action that a user might perform requires that user to have been granted the privilege to perform that specific action. To grant each user each individual privilege to which they are entitled would be impractical. Instead, privileges are combined into groups, or roles, and these roles are assigned to users. The roles are defined once (but may be modified at any time) and used for as many users as desired.
19.1.2.4 Predefined Roles

These are the roles that come predefined in AxisTV.

**System Administrator**
Administers all aspects of the AxisTV installation. Includes all privileges. It cannot be modified.

**Content Approver**
Approves content (bulletins and crawls) on behalf of other AxisTV users. Includes the following privileges:

- Approve Crawllist Item
- Approve Playlist Item
- Approve Spot
- Approve Video Program
- Create Bulletin
- Create Crawl Text
- Create Crawllist Item
- Create Playlist Item
- Create Templates (v.7.0.018 and higher)
- Create Shared Folder
- Create Spot
- Create Video Program
- Global Dictionary
- Import Resource
- Login Interactively
- Manage Alerts
- Manage Backgrounds
- Manage Events
- Manage Stock
- Manage Weather
- Schedule Crawllist Item Forever
- Schedule Playlist Item Forever

**Content Creator**
Creates content (bulletins and crawls) to be displayed on AxisTV devices. Includes the following privileges:

- Create Bulletin
- Create Crawl Text
- Create Crawllist Item
- Create Playlist Item
- Create Spot
- Create Video Program
- Login Interactively
- Schedule Crawllist Item Forever
- Schedule Playlist Item Forever

**Template User**
This role is for the use of creating bulletins from existing templates only. It has been assigned the ‘Use Templates to Create Bulletin’ privilege. No other privileges, other than to Login Interactively, have been assigned to it by default.

*Note: The Template User role is available to customers using v.7.0.18 and higher.*
### Privilege List

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Privilege</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Administer Content Settings</strong></td>
<td>Grants the user ability to change the settings that govern content creation and rendition. These settings are maintained in System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Administer Crawllist Groups</strong></td>
<td>Grants the user ability to administer crawllist groups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Administer Display Groups</strong></td>
<td>Grants the user ability to administer display groups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Administer Playlist Groups</strong></td>
<td>Grants the user ability to administer playlist groups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Administer Roles</strong></td>
<td>Grants the user ability to add, change and remove roles from the system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Administer Screensaver</strong></td>
<td>Grants the user ability to administer the Screensaver Plugin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Administer Users</strong></td>
<td>Grants the user ability to add, change and remove users from the system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Approve Crawllist Item</strong></td>
<td>Grants the user ability to approve their own or other users' crawls submitted to a crawllist. A user with this privilege can only approve crawls on crawllists they can access. When a user with this privilege schedules a crawl it is automatically approved and starts playing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Approve Playlist Item</strong></td>
<td>Grants the user ability to approve their own or other users' bulletins submitted to a playlist. A user with this privilege can only approve bulletins on playlists they can access. When a user with this privilege schedules a bulletin it is automatically approved and starts playing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Approve Spot</strong></td>
<td>Grants the user ability to approve MPEG Player Spots.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Approve Video Program</strong></td>
<td>Grants the user ability to approve External Video Programs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Create Bulletin</strong></td>
<td>Grants the user ability to create a new bulletin. Users can create bulletins from any valid bulletin creation source, based on the licensing of the system. This privilege does not give a user the ability to schedule or approve bulletins.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Create Bulletin from</strong></td>
<td>Grants user the ability to create a bulletin from templates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Privilege</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Template</strong></td>
<td>only. No other privileges, other than to login interactively, have been assigned to it by default. <strong>Note: This feature is available to customers using v.7.0.18 and higher.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Create Crawl Text</strong></td>
<td>Grants the user ability to create a new crawl. Users can create crawls from any valid crawl creation source, based on the licensing of the system. This privilege does not give a user the ability to schedule or approve crawls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Create Crawlist Item</strong></td>
<td>Grants the user ability to schedule a crawl on one or more crawllists. A user can only schedule crawls on crawllists they can access. This privilege does not give a user the ability to approve a crawl, therefore it will not start playing just because it is scheduled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Create Custom Templates</strong></td>
<td>The 'Create Custom Templates' privilege gives permission to users to create and edit Templates in AxisTV Desktop and the ability to delete Templates in Manage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Create Desktop Message</strong></td>
<td>Grants the user ability to create new desktop messages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Create Playlist Item</strong></td>
<td>Grants the user ability to schedule a bulletin on one or more playlists. A user can only schedule bulletins on playlists they can access. This privilege does not give a user the ability to approve a bulletin, therefore it will not start playing just because it is scheduled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Create Shared Folder</strong></td>
<td>Grants the user ability to create shared folders that everyone can view. Shared folders can group bulletins and/or crawls. Most users do not need this privilege as every user can create personal folders for this purpose.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Create Spot</strong></td>
<td>Grants the user ability to schedule MPEG Player Spots.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Create Text Message</strong></td>
<td>Grants the user ability to create text messages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Create Video Program</strong></td>
<td>Grants the user ability to schedule External Video Programs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Global Dictionary</strong></td>
<td>Grants the user ability to update the global dictionary the spell check uses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Import Resource</strong></td>
<td>Grants the user ability to upload and import external files into the clipart library. This privilege does not have anything to do with uploading images during bulletin creation. This privilege should be granted sparingly because large video files can take up valuable disk space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Privilege</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Login Interactively</td>
<td>Grants the user ability to login to the web interface of AxisTV.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage Alerts</td>
<td>Grants the user ability to manage alert playlists and alert crawllists. This privilege is not very useful by itself. It must normally accompany Create Playlist Item and/or Create Crawllist Item. It is ever more useful when you add Approve Crawllist Item and/or Approve Playlist Item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage Backgrounds</td>
<td>Grants the user ability to add, change and delete background images available within AxisTV.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage Events</td>
<td>Grants the user ability to add, change and remove Event Schedule events, rooms, event types and event statuses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage My Templates</td>
<td>Grants users the ability to create and edit Templates in AxisTV Desktop and the ability to delete Templates in Manage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage Stock</td>
<td>Grants the user ability to add, change and remove Stock values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manage Weather</td>
<td>Grants the user ability to add, change and remove weather icons, locations, current conditions and forecasts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule Crawllist Item Forever</td>
<td>Grants the user ability to schedule a crawllist item forever. Without this privilege the option &quot;Forever&quot; does not appear in the schedule crawl screens.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schedule Playlist Item Forever</td>
<td>Grants the user ability to schedule a playlist item forever. Without this privilege the option &quot;Forever&quot; does not appear in the schedule bulletin screens.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Crawllist Groups</td>
<td>Grants the user ability to use crawllist groups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Display Groups</td>
<td>Grants the user ability to use display groups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Templates to Create Bulletin</td>
<td>Grants users the ability to create a new bulletin only from existing templates inside the User Interface. Note: Available to customers using v7.0.18 and higher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use Playlist Groups</td>
<td>Grants the user ability to use playlist groups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View Player Snapshots</td>
<td>Allows users to see the Channel Player Snapshots screen under Now Playing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
19.1.3 ActiveDirectory

ActiveDirectory integration is a new feature that is available only with the Enterprise license. It enables users to use the AxisTV Web User Interface without need for a manual login. If a user is not authorized or is unknown by the ActiveDirectory integration, then the classic AxisTV login page appears.

19.1.3.1 IIS

Before ActiveDirectory integration can be configured in AxisTV, IIS must first be configured to support integrated authentication. If IIS isn't configured properly then the user may receive resource not found errors.

HTTP Keep-Alives must be enabled.

Anonymous access must be disabled and Integrated Windows® authentication must be enabled.
19.1.3.2 Configuration

Once IIS has been properly configured and verified (users can still login manually), then ActiveDirectory integration can be configured within AxisTV.

19.1.3.2.1 Tei.Settings.xml

This file is contained within the same directory as the server executable files. Below are the portions of the file that control ActiveDirectory integration.

```
<Security>
    <Integration
        on="false"
        type="Windows"
        principalId="UserId"
        dropAuthority="false">
        <GroupPrecedences count="0" usingAliases="false">
          ...
        </GroupPrecedences>
    </Integration>
</Security>
```

19.1.3.2.2 <Security><Integration> Options

These options control the ActiveDirectory integration.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>on</td>
<td>“true” turns integration on, while “false” turns it off.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>type</td>
<td>“Windows” indicates ActiveDirectory. No other option is currently supported.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>principalId</td>
<td>“UserId” indicates to use the user’s account name (domain\userid) for login, while “GroupId” indicates to use one of the user’s group account names (domain\groupid) for login. If GroupId is chosen, you can control the order of precedence for the groups.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dropAuthority</td>
<td>“true” causes the domain\ portion of the user and group names to be removed before login is attempted. This is helpful if all users and groups are within the same domain. Aliases are more powerful, though.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
19.1.3.2.3 <GroupPrecedences> Options

These options control the order in which group membership is evaluated.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>count</td>
<td>The number of GroupPrecedence entries in the list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usingAliases</td>
<td>“true” indicates the list is comprised of aliases rather than actual domain\groupid names. “false” indicates the list is comprised of domain\groupid names.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GroupPrecedence1…N</td>
<td>Each entry must be numbered from 1 to count. The order you define here controls the evaluation order for membership. This is to give grant/deny capability similar to Windows® ACL editor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>The domain\groupid or alias name of the group. You cannot intermix aliases and domain\groupid full names.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

19.1.3.2.4 <Aliases> Options

These options define user and group aliases that are substituted before login is attempted. This is very useful for long names (AxisTV imposes a 20 character limit on login credentials).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>count</td>
<td>The number of Alias entries in the list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alias1…N</td>
<td>Each entry must be numbered from 1 to count.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>The name the alias substitutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>value</td>
<td>The value that is substituted for the name.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

19.2 Backup and restore procedures

AxisTV includes a facility to backup and restore the AxisTV database.
19.2.1 Frequency

The frequency with which your AxisTV database should be backed up is dependent on your organization's usage habits. The frequency of the changes to your settings and bulletins coupled with your tolerance for data loss will indicate the proper frequency.

19.2.2 Automation

Currently AxisTV does not facilitate the automation of the backup procedure.

19.2.3 Procedure for MSDE

19.2.3.1 Backup

1. Start | Programs | Visix | Configure Application
   a. On the Services Tab
      i. Highlight MSSQLSERVER and click Stop
      ii. Click Refresh until MSSQLSERVER is labeled as Stopped
      iii. Highlight MSSQLSERVER and click Start
      iv. Click Refresh until MSSQLSERVER is labeled Running
   b. On the SQL Server Tab
      i. Highlight AxisTV database and click Backup
         1. Name the backup file
         2. Click Save
   c. Exit the AxisTV Configuration Utility

2. Copy the Binary Storage File under C:Program Files/Visix/AxisTV Content Services to a zipped folder and Save to a location other then the Content Manager/Server

3. Reboot

19.2.3.2 Backup using AxisTVBackup.bat

1. Download the Visix AxisTVBackup.bat file using the Support Download Utility on the Content Server, e.g., Run | Programs | Visix | Support Download Utility.

   Note: It will download to the C:\Program Files\Visix\AxisTV Content Services\Support folder.

2. Execute the batch file from the Support folder.
   Note: process will stop all the AxisTV services and make a backup of the AxisTV database and the Binary Storage folder.

3. Once the backup is complete, it will create a folder: C:\AxisTVBackup\AxisTVBinaryStorage__
   Inside that folder, you will find a folder named BinaryStorage and a file named AxisTVBackup__.bak.
   These are two essential items you must have in the event of a Hard Drive failure or an OS failure of your Content Server. We recommend that you copy these files to an external drive, such as a USB drive, and store them in a safe environment.

   Note: The frequency with which your AxisTV database should be backed up is dependent on your organization's usage habits. The frequency of the changes to your settings and bulletins, coupled with your tolerance for data loss will indicate the proper frequency.
19.2.3.2 Restore

1. Start | Programs | Visix | Configure Device
   a. On the Services Tab
      i. Highlight MSSQLSERVER and click Stop
      ii. Click Refresh until MSSQLSERVER is labeled as Stopped
      iii. Highlight MSSQLSERVER and click Start
      iv. Click Refresh until MSSQLSERVER is labeled Running
   b. On the SQL Server Tab
      i. Click Restore
      ii. Locate and pick the backup file
      iii. Click Open
      iv. Click Restore
   c. Exit the AxisTV Configuration Utility
   d. Replace the C:\Program Files\Visix\Content Services\Binary Storage file with the previously saved one
2. Reboot the server

19.2.4 Procedure for SQL Express 2005

- Refer to the SQL Express 2005 documentation for backup procedures

19.3 Licensing

19.3.1 Description

AxisTV installs all features of the system. Licensing controls whether or not a particular feature is available. Each installation (Content Manager/Server and all of its associated Channel Players) has an Installation Key or CD Key. Each feature and its quantity, where applicable, require a License Key. This key is created from the installation key, a code from the server itself and the definition of the feature. A License Manager tool is included with AxisTV. It allows you to review the features activated on your server. If you later purchase new features, this tool allows you to request and then activate a new License Key for that new feature.

19.3.2 How to request a License Key

- Run Start | Programs | Visix | License Manager

- The “Activate Server” dialog will appear if this is the first time the license manager is run
  a. Enter the CD key and click “Activate”

- Create a license request file for displays
  a. Click File | Activate Feature menu
  b. Click “Next” to request an activation key
  c. Pick the “Feature”, enter into “Quantity” the number desired and click “Create Request File”.
  d. The request file should be saved in C:\Program Files\Visix\AxisTV\License

- In systems that have been upgraded from previous versions of AxisTV, this file name may contain “TEi” instead of “Visix”. For example: C:\Program Files\TEi\AxisTV\License
• Submit the request file to Visix to have activation keys issued
  a. Email all of the .req files in C:\Program Files\Visix\AxisTV\License along with information to identify your installation. This would include your organization name, your reseller’s name, the Visix Sales Order number located on the packing list, etc. Your request file will be matched to your recorded system configuration to generate the correct license files for your system, which will then be returned to you.
  b. In systems that have been upgraded from previous versions of AxisTV, this file name may contain “TEi” instead of “Visix”. For example: C:\Program Files\TEi\AxisTV\License
  c. Send to licensing@visix.com
  d. Only features and quantities that can be verified will receive activation keys

19.3.3 How to activate a new License Key

Once your requested License Keys have been delivered to you, you must activate the new keys.

1. Run Start | Programs | Visix | License Manager

2. Activate the features once activation keys have been created

   d. Click File | Activate Feature menu

   e. Select “I already have an activation key” and click “Next”

   f. Click “Import Activation Key” to import a key then click “Activate” to activate the key

   g. Repeat previous step for all keys that require activation

3. Boot the server for all changes to take effect
20 Network Administration

The following information applies to both Content Manager/Servers and Channel Players and must be read by network administrators who are responsible for integrating AxisTV into your network.

20.1 Server Identification

The AxisTV system configuration requires that the servers be assigned invariant identifiers. The mechanism selected to achieve this will depend on your established network environment. AxisTV is designed to accept DNS names or IP addresses for these identifiers. This implies that in a NetBIOS enabled environment the Windows® computer name can also be used.

20.1.1 AxisTV Windows® Accounts

AxisTV requires local administrator accounts to operate correctly. The Content Manager/Servers require a local administrator account for certain services to run correctly.

20.1.1.1 AxisTV User Account Network Rights

In order for the AxisTV software to read, import or otherwise reference files that are external to the AxisTV servers, e.g., Dean Evans and Associates EMS® Professional database, you must ensure that the user account assigned to all the AxisTV Windows® Services is granted access on all relevant networked servers and PCs.

The Windows® Services that use a named account are:

- AxisTV Content Manager/Server
- AxisTV Dean Evans EMS® Adapter
- AxisTV Delphi® Adapter
- AxisTV Email Plug-in
- AxisTV Event Schedule Plug-in
- AxisTV Event Schedule Text Adapter
- AxisTV Hyperfeed CGI Adapter
- AxisTV National Weather Service Adapter
- AxisTV Screen Saver Plug-in
- AxisTV Screen Saver Server
- AxisTV Stock Plug-in
- AxisTV Stock Text Adapter
- AxisTV Weather Plug-in

All of these services require a named user account that is a member of the local Administrators group on the AxisTV servers.

The named account can be a local account or a Domain account.

In its simplest form creating an account on the network resource with a username of “axistvuser” and a password of “TechTech1!” and granting that account access to the desired files can achieve these requirements. This account matches the default account on all AxisTV servers.

You can test access to a file share from the AxisTV server by logging in as the named user and attempting to access the file share with Windows® Explorer.
20.1.1.2 Windows® login account and/or password change procedure

As mentioned above, several of the AxisTV services use named accounts to operate. This means that if you desire to change the account name or the password for this account, it must be changed in several places. This only applies to Content Manager/Servers, not a Channel Player.

1. Create the new account or change the password of the axistvuser account.
2. For a new account go to Start | Settings | Control Panel | Administrative Tools | Local Security Policy | Local Policies | User Rights Assignment. Grant the new user account the “Log on as a service” policy in the Local Policy Settings (or the Domain Policy Settings).
3. Go to Start | Settings | Control Panel | Administrative Tools | Services. The left-hand column shows the names of the services. The AxisTV service names all begin AxisTV. If you sort the services window by name (default) then all of the AxisTV services will be grouped together.
4. The right-hand column, Log On As, indicates the account that each service operates under. Locate all of the AxisTV services that do not log on as Local System. These must be modified.
5. For each service identified above, go to Properties for that service and select the Log On tab.
6. “This account:” will be checked (If it is not then you selected an incorrect service). Enter the new account and/or password and confirm the new password.
7. Reboot the server.

20.1.2 Network Ports

The AxisTV system communicates on specific TCP and UDP ports. The AxisTV Content Manager/Server and Channel Players use one TCP port to facilitate communication with each other. They are set at the factory to use 6500, and can be changed during setup. The Content Manager/Server shall require access to UDP port 123 for its time service and to TCP port 80 for the Web interface. Depending on optional features and system configuration, other ports might be required. All protocols used by AxisTV are listed below.

- FTP – File Transfer Protocol (TCP port 21 and others as required by the Microsoft® Windows® Internet (WinINet) application programming interface): Outbound – retrieve weather data
- SMTP (TCP port 25): Outbound - email notification and service communication
- HTTP (TCP port 80): Inbound - user access, Outbound – Data feed service
- POP3 (TCP port 110): Outbound – Retrieve email for email bulletin creation feature
- Network Time Protocol (UDP port 123): Outbound - Automatic time setting of Content Manager/Server
- AxisTV (TCP port 6500/6501/6502, configurable): Outbound – Content Manager/Server, Inbound – Channel Player - system communications

Exactly how these requirements are met will be a function of your network and will need to be determined by your network administrator.

20.1.3 Workgroup or Domain

You may choose to make the server a member of your network domain or workgroup. This is not required for operation of the system, but may be desirable from a network administration perspective. Contact your network administrator for instruction on adding the server to your local networking environment if this is desired.

It is important to note that group policies applied to domain computers may render AxisTV inoperable or to have degraded behavior. AxisTV machines must not be considered desktop machines for the purposes of security policies. Domain group policies must carefully considered before application to AxisTV.
20.2 Network Security Considerations

20.2.1 Windows® Updates

Visix recommends applying all critical patches and service packs. Moreover we stand behind the operation of the system after an update. Should any Windows® update adversely affect the operation of the AxisTV system Visix will immediately work to resolve the problem.

AxisTV ships with Automatic Windows® Updates disabled. This is because the behavior of the Channel Players cannot be guaranteed during and after an update. For the same reason your organization should use care in developing a plan to push updates down to these machines.

20.2.2 Security Policy

The Security Policy screen allows you to set the security parameters for the AxisTV installation. The security policy covers password rules, intrusion rules and new account rules. All changes on this screen take effect immediately. Changes to password rules may require you to adjust your password immediately to comply with the new rules. When a user logs in their password is checked against the existing password rules and forced to change their password if it no longer meets the valid password criteria.

- Minimum Length - The minimum length a password can be. This value must be large enough to accommodate rules such as upper/lower case and inclusion of numbers and special characters. The system will validate this number against the other rules before applying any changes.

- Maximum Length - The maximum length a password can be.

- Automatically Expires In - The number of days that a password is valid.

- Enforce Password History - The number of passwords to remember to enforce uniqueness. This feature prevents a user from reusing the same password when it expires.

- Require Upper and Lower Case - If checked, this will require that all passwords contain at least one lower case letter and one upper case letter. The implication of this rule is that Minimum Length cannot be below 2, if specified.

- Numbers Count - The number of numeric digits required. This number affects the Minimum Length, if specified.

- Special Characters Count - The number of non-alphanumeric characters required. This includes punctuation marks and all other symbols on the keyboard. This number affects the Minimum Length, if specified.

- Lockout Threshold - The number of bad login attempts required to lock a user out of the system.

- Lock-Out Time span - The number of minutes to lock a user out of the system after the Lock-Out Threshold has been reached.

- Default Password - The password to assign to all new users.

- Expires at First Login - If checked, the system will force all new users to change their password upon first login. Visix recommends this behavior as the Default Password is, by nature, not secure.
21 Status, Errors & Troubleshooting AxisTV

21.1 General Troubleshooting

- AxisTV contains the necessary tools to diagnose most issues.
- Issues reported are sometimes symptoms of another issue, solve the problem not the symptom.
- Rebooting
  - Don’t spend a lot of time diagnosing an issue that might be odd Windows® behavior.
  - If a deeper issue is occurring, it will still occur after a reboot.
- Try to communicate
  - Using “Manage Channel Player” screen, Telnet or Ping try to contact the player in question and reboot, or refresh.
- Logs
  - Use the Logs discussed on the next slides to look for more detail or the cause of an issue.

21.2 Content Manager/Server Troubleshooting

- The Web UX no longer writes events to the Windows® Application Event Log. A new information icon has been added to the banner to grant access to all errors that have occurred during the current logon session.

- You can view all errors that have occurred during the logon session simply by clicking the information icon.
- A separate browser window will open and show all the errors. The page states when no errors have occurred since logon.

An AxisTV internal error has been reported. This page may not behave correctly because of the error. To view technical detail about the error, please click the information link at the top of the page.

- When an error occurs the page now indicates the user can view the error detail via the information link (icon).
- When errors have occurred during the logon session, they are presented in reverse order – with the most recent error at the top of the list, and the oldest error at the bottom.
  - AxisTV Error Log
    - The AxisTV Error Log contains information that the Windows® event log does not.
• Manage Channel Player Screen
  - Can be used to “Refresh” the Channel Player and verify that the Content Manager/Server can communicate properly with the Channel Player
  - Can be used to “Reboot” the Channel Player to test for recurrence of an issue.

• Telnet (from DOS window)
  - Manually connect to a Channel Player

• Ping (from DOS window)
  - Check to ensure that a Channel Player is present on the network

21.3 Channel Player Troubleshooting

• Daily Detail Logs
  - A detailed log is kept in the \{AxisTV Installation Directory\}\Logs
  - The daily detail logs tracks all connection and file transfer information as well as errors.

• AxisTV Console
  - Can be used to verify resolution, sound inputs and network settings

• Windows® Event Log
  - Identify errors or issues that are not written to the AxisTV daily detail logs.

• Remote Access Tools
  - Content Manager/Server and Channel Players come with RDP enabled.

21.4 Status and Error reporting behavior

21.4.1 Description

Status and error reporting and alarms are fundamental functions within AxisTV. They form the basis of all troubleshooting efforts within the system.

21.4.1.1 Status

The Status screen shows you the status of the Content Manager/Server and services within the AxisTV installation. The key to this subsystem is that every device reports its status every few minutes. If something is wrong with a Content Manager/Server or a service on you'll see it not reporting in as OK.
21.4.1.2 Errors

The Errors screen shows you the errors reported by the Content Manager/Server within the AxisTV installation. This subsystem definitively records all internal application errors and many logical errors that can occur while running the system. If you ever need assistance with a problem, chances are its cause is documented in this screen.

21.4.1.3 Alarms

The Alarms screen shows you the alarms reported by all services within the AxisTV installation. This subsystem is intended to track down or mitigate problems in a given installation by raising alarms in the event of particular types of failures in the system. Each alarm condition allows for restarting of services, rebooting of a device, email notification, and/or auto clearing of alarms, as applicable.

21.4.2 Status entry generation

Every service within AxisTV reports status to the status log of the Content Manager/Server.

The services each report that they are OK approximately every 5 minutes. Every time a service reports in the entry for that service is updated in the log.

21.4.3 Error entry generation

Error logs behave as status logs do in that the data is generated and stored locally and relayed back to the Content Manager/Server on a regular basis.

Any error that occurs within the AxisTV application is recorded in the error log if possible. If the error reporting subsystem is unable to record the error to the log it will forward that error to the Windows® Application Log, which is viewable with Event Viewer. AxisTV only maintains a record of the latest occurrence of a particular error. If an error is occurring repeatedly, you will only see the most recent instance.

Some errors indicate failure conditions outside of the AxisTV devices themselves such as a failure to communicate over the network, or a failure to locate a device or service. Such failures may be configured to raise alarms so that corrective action may be taken.

21.4.4 Viewing

Status, error and alarm messages may be viewed from the System Tools Menu. The user must have the Administer Content Settings privilege to access this information. Additionally, for a user with the appropriate privilege an alarm indicator appears on the main welcome page.

21.4.4.1 Status

The Status screen shows you the status of the Content Manager/Server within the AxisTV installation. The information is refreshed every few minutes. The name of each service, the time and date that it last checked in, and the version of that service are listed here.

21.4.4.2 Errors

The Errors screen shows you the errors reported within the AxisTV installation. The information is refreshed every few minutes from all the devices on the network.

The time of the last occurrence of the error, the internal error code and the description of the error are listed here. The entire list is sorted by most recent errors first. These are the ones that are most likely relevant to any problem you are having with the system. The entire text of the error is included in the description, in a scrolling text box. Much of this description will be technical, but is valuable to support staff for rectifying a problem.
21.4.4.3 Alarms

The Alarms screen shows you the alarms reported within the AxisTV installation. The information is refreshed every few minutes from all the devices on the network.

The date and time of the last occurrence of the alarm and the description of the alarm are listed here. The entire list is sorted by most recent alarms first. These are the ones that are most likely relevant to any problem you are having with the system.

21.4.5 Capturing

You can view, print or save the current system error or status report by clicking the Error Report or Status Report link. The report will open in a separate browser window in plain text format. If E-Mail support is not enabled in AxisTV then you can use this link to save and e-mail Visix support the system errors or status. The reports should be E-Mailed to support@visix.com.

21.4.6 Forwarding

If you need to contact Visix support you can generate an email containing the statuses and error messages by clicking the E-Mail Visix Support button. This button is available on both System Tools | Status Reports and System Tools | Error Logs. When you click the button an E-Mail message is generated and sent automatically. You have no opportunity to edit the message. You should contact Visix Technical Support separately to inform them that this message has been sent (If they did not ask you to send it).

The information contained in the message is exactly the information that is visible on the Status and Error pages. No other information is sent to Visix.

21.5 Specific Errors

21.5.1 An Internal Error has occurred

I get a notice at the top of the screen that “an internal error has occurred”.

- Click on the information icon “i” on the top right side of the user interface to view specific information on the error
  - Review the Windows® Event Logs (Backup and Clear Event Logs the Reboot before reviewing Windows® Event Logs makes errors easier to review)
  - Sometimes caused by network issues (i.e. loses communication to a Channel Player in mid stream)
21.5.2 Channel Player is not updating

Changes made on the Content Manager/Server are not shown on the Channel Player.

- Make a change, review the Channel Player log (C:\Program Files\Visix\AxisTV\Logs\yyymmdd.log)
- At the bottom, file transfers are shown
- Reboot the Channel Player
- Reboot the Content Manager/Server

21.5.3 Channel Player behaves erratically

The Channel Player exhibits erratic behavior

- Reboot
- Review Logs Channel Player logs for errors
- Review the environment on the Channel Player to ensure that Virus Scanners, Backup Agents, or other processor intense applications have not been installed on the Channel Player.
- Group Policies can also have undesirable effects.

21.5.4 Content Manager/Server responds slowly

AxisTV Content Manager/Server is responding slowly

- Check size of Binary Storage folder
- Check Event Logs
- Check Memory & disk space
- Validate configuration for Backup Agents or Virus Scanners (use Task Manager to see what is using processor and memory)
- Reboot
21.6 Building a Content Manager/Server

The setup steps for AxisTV Content Manager/Servers follow:

21.6.1 Build and Clone OS
1. Confirm hardware configuration, correct amount of RAM, etc.
2. Configure BIOS settings
   a. Power Up after Power Fail – Last State
   b. Silent Boot – Disabled
   c. Boot Device Priority
      i. First - CD
      ii. Second - Hard Drive

21.6.2 Windows® XP Pro
3. Setup Windows® XP Pro as described below:
   a. One NTFS partition – Create a new partition, delete any old ones
   b. Name: Valued Visix Customer, Org: VISIX (Visix, Inc.)
   c. Computer name - AxisTV, administrator password – A4d35Hec
   d. Accept “Typical” network settings i.e., DHCP
   e. Leave as a member of WORKGROUP
   f. Do Not activate
   g. Set “Your Name” account to be AxisTVUser, no others
   h. Start | Control Panel | Add or Remove Programs | Add/Remove Windows® Components
      i. Accessories and Utilities | Details
         1. No games
         ii. Internet Explorer® – Full
         iii. Internet Information Service | Details
            1. Common Files
            2. FrontPage® 2000 Server Extensions
            3. Internet Information Services Snap-In
            4. World Wide Web Service | Details
               a. World Wide Web Service only
               iv. Network services – No Change
               v. Windows® Media Player – Full
               vi. Uncheck all others not listed
   4. Check for and install missing hardware drivers
   5. Start | Control Panel | User Accounts
      i. Change the way users log on or off
         i. Uncheck Use the Welcome Screen
      j. Change an account
         i. Select AxisTVUser
            1. Create a password – TechTech1!
            2. Do not make files and folders private
            3. Change my picture
               a. Select a suitable image (airplane, astronaut)
   6. Display Properties
      k. Theme Tab
         i. Windows® Classic
      l. Screen Saver Tab
         i. Set Screen Saver to None
         ii. Set the operating system power settings
            1. Set System Standby, Hard Disks, and Monitor to NEVER
            2. Save scheme as AxisTV
      m. Settings Tab
         i. 1024 x 768
7. Taskbar and Start Menu Properties
   n. Clear “Hide inactive icons” checkbox
   o. Start Menu Tab
      i. Use Classic Start Menu
      ii. Customize Button
         1. Check all items listed below, uncheck those not listed
            a. Display Administrative Tools
            b. Display Logoff
            c. Display Run
            d. Enable Drag and Drop
            e. Show Small Icons in Start Menu
   p. Delete unnecessary entries from Start Menu
   q. Sort each Start Menu section
8. My Computer | Properties
   r. Advanced tab | Performance section | Settings button
      i. Visual Effects Tab
         1. Select Adjust for Best Performance
      ii. Advanced Tab | Virtual Memory Section | Change Button
         1. Set Initial Size to 2 x physical RAM installed
         2. Set Maximum Size to 2 x physical RAM installed
   s. Remote tab
      i. Clear the Remote Assistance check box
      ii. Check the Remote Desktop check box
9. Open Windows® Explorer
   t. Set the view in the right hand pane to View Details
   u. Tools | Folder Options | View Tab
      i. Check all items listed below, uncheck those not listed
         1. Automatically search for network folders and printers
         2. Display contents of system folders
         3. Display the full path in the address bar
         4. Display the full path in the title bar
         5. Show hidden files and folders
         6. Remember each folder’s view settings
      v. Apply to all folders
10. Desktop
    w. Delete all unnecessary shortcuts
    x. Delete My Documents shortcut
    y. Arrange icons (check then uncheck Auto Arrange)
11. My Network Places | Properties | Local Area Connection | Properties
    z. Select Internet Protocol | Properties
       i. Select Obtain IP address automatically
       ii. Select Obtain DNS server address automatically
12. .NET Framework
    aa. Confirm MS .NET Framework is installed
    bb. Install .NET SP1
13. My Computer | Manage | Event Viewer
    cc. Set all event logs to 1024 KB in size
    dd. Overwrite as needed
14. Set the Internet Explorer® homepage to “localhost”
15. Change IIS Settings
    ee. Start | Run | cmd
       i. Execute the command “C:\Windows\Microsoft.NET\framework\[latest version]\aspnet_regiis -i”
    ff. Start | Settings | Control Panel | Administrative Tools | Internet Information Services – Expand items in left pane until “Default Web Site” is displayed.
       i. Open properties for Default Web Site
          1. On Home Directory tab
             a. Change default Web site to point to C:\
          2. On Documents tab
             a. Add Default.aspx
16. Start | Settings | Control Panel | Windows Firewall
   gg. Set firewall On
   hh. Exceptions tab
      i. Select Remote Desktop ONLY
      ii. Advanced tab | Local Area Connection | Settings button
         i. Add new services
      ii. Select existing service
         1. Web Server (HTTP), IP: Localhost
   17. Start | Settings | Control Panel | Automatic Updates
      jj. Select Download updates for me, but let me choose when to install
      kk. Set “Network Access: Sharing & security model for local accounts” to “Classic – local users authenticate as themselves”
   19. Apply latest Windows® Updates
20. Create a ‘C:\Program files\Visix\Installers\AxisTV’ folder
21. Reboot machine

21.6.3 Windows® Server 2003

AxisTV can be installed on a server using Windows® Server 2003 as the operating system instead of Windows® XP. There are some additional steps that will need to be taken when installing AxisTV with Server 2003.

1. Prior to installation, you must enable the ‘Application Server Role’, which includes IIS and ASP.NET. To verify this role is enabled, go to the ‘Configure Your Server Wizard’.
2. Axisowner, axisowner1! is not complex enough for the user will have to create this manually and uncheck the “enforce password complexity rules”
3. Add the MIME type of *, application/octet-stream to IIS (preview images under “Now Playing” may not display if this is not done).

Verify that the ‘Application server’ role has been enabled.

21.6.3.1 IIS

After installation (after Initialize Device if you prefer) you must verify that the ASP.NET runtime associated with the default Web Site (normally named AxisTV) is 2.0, not 1.1. If it remains 1.1 the Web User Interface will fail to execute and respond with resource not found errors.

21.6.3.2 SQL Server 2005 Express

The installer creates an unnamed (default) instance, enabled mixed-mode security and assigns the strong password ‘techtech1!’ to the sa account.
21.6.3.3 Initialize Device

Initialize Device has been changed to create connections to the default SQL Server 2005 instance using ‘sa’ and ‘techtech1’.

21.6.4 Install and Configure AxisTV

1. Copy the AxisTV Content installation folder into ‘C:\Program files\Visix\Installers\AxisTV’ to allow to be run locally
2. Install the Content Manager/Server Software as outlined in the following chapter
3. Run Windows® Update and apply any critical or security updates
4. Reboot

21.6.5 Configure Server from Clone

1. Clone new machine from AxisTV image file
2. Change the name of Server
3. Run Start | Programs | AxisTV | License Manager
   a. Record the Volume ID that is displayed in the application status bar
4. Create all license key files using the License Generator
   a. Use the recorded Volume ID
   b. Use the installation key
   c. Create the appropriate license files
   d. Copy all license files to C:\Program Files\Visix\AxisTV\License
5. Run Start | Programs | AxisTV | Initialize Device
   a. Enter the installation key if required
   b. Boot the device when prompted
6. Set Time Server
   a. Set SNTP parameters. Run Start | Run – enter “cmd”. At the resulting command prompt:
      i. Set parameters
         1. Net time /setsntp: <ip address>
      ii. Verify parameters
         1. Net time /querysntp
7. Configure AxisTV default values
   a. Log in to AxisTV
      i. Administrator account password is tech
   b. Go to Library
      i. Backgrounds to build cache
      ii. Video Clips
         a. 
   c. Go to System | Manage Displays to add a display and create content blocks, etc.
      i. Add display:
         1. If channel server(s) are available enter channel server computer name, repeat for each
         2. Friendly Name:
            a. “Display 1,” etc.
         3. Telnet Port
            a. Default is 6500
      ii. Mode:
         1. (If ImpactVCB installed in associated display only) ImpactVCB:
            a. Yes, Composite, 0, 0, 640, 480
   d. Go to System | Content Settings
      i. Boot Schedule
         1. Click “Boot NOW!”
   e. Go to System | Content Settings
      i. Crawllists
         1. Set all crawl speeds to 3 (or leave at 4)
21.7 Installing the Content Manager/Server Software

21.7.1 AxisTV Content Services

This installer can be used to setup the following kinds of devices:

- AxisTV Content Manager/Server
- AxisTV Publishing Server
- AxisTV Combined Content and Publishing Server

The default manufacturing installation should be AxisTV Combined Content and Publishing Server. Enterprise or large Professional customers will likely want to install additional AxisTV Publishing Servers as they see fit.

21.7.1.1 Supporting Software

All Content Manager/Servers should be configured with the following optional software installed:

- Adobe Flash® Player (8.0 or higher) for Windows® and Internet Explorer®
- SQL Server Management Studio Express
- Microsoft® .NET Framework 1.1 is required in order to execute the Channel Player and is bundled into the installer.

On some Windows® XP installations, the Windows® Installer service itself is automatically updated by the installer. If this happens the PC may require a reboot and will continue the installation after the reboot.

21.7.1.3 ‘Custom’ Installation Components

Content Manager/Servers

In the current release Content Manager/Servers include all base Content Manager/Server services: creation, scheduling and distribution to Channel Players. It excludes publishers to non-Channel Player end-points.

Content Publishers

In the current release Content Publishers include all non-Channel Player end-point publishers.

Channel Player Remote Update

The remote update feature includes all Channel Player executables as well as the firmware update instruction file. This feature DOES NOT cause the updates to be sent to Channel Players automatically – an administrator needs to use the “Channel Player Utility” to perform that task.

Install to

For upgrades, be sure to change the location to the previous version location if you want to preserve the database in the \Database subfolder.
21.7.1.3.1  PowerPoint® Compatibility and Specifications

Directly importing Microsoft PowerPoint into AxisTV can be accomplished through the web-browser interface under certain conditions. Specifically, the AxisTV Content Manager must be running the Microsoft XP Professional or Server 2003 operating systems and PowerPoint 2003 must be installed and configured on the Content Manager.

More recent operating systems (Vista, Windows 7 and Server 2008 R1 & R2) and PowerPoint releases (2007 and 2010) do not support the direct import of PowerPoint into AxisTV. This lack of support is not a function of AxisTV or changes to the AxisTV application; rather it is Microsoft’s revised security protocols.

General Overview of the Microsoft changes

In Windows® XP, Windows Server® 2003, and earlier versions of the Windows operating system, all services run in the same session as the first user who logs on to the console. This session is called Session 0. Running services and user applications together in Session 0 poses a security risk because services run at elevated privilege and therefore are targets for malicious agents who are looking for a way to elevate their own privilege level.

In Windows Vista®, Windows Server 2008, and later versions of Windows, the operating system mitigates this security risk by isolating services in Session 0 and making Session 0 non-interactive. Only system processes and services run in Session 0. The first user logs on to Session 1, and subsequent users log on to subsequent sessions. This means that services never run in the same session as users’ applications and are therefore protected from attacks that originate in application code.

Options for Supporting Recent Microsoft PowerPoint Releases and Operating Systems

OPTION 1: Save PowerPoint Presentations as JPEG or PNG files and subsequently import them into AxisTV.

OPTION 2: Convert PowerPoint Presentations to Flash and import them into AxisTV. Users may choose a customized version of PowerFlashPoint available from Visix for $149 per license or some other commercially available product like Adobe Captivate.

OPTION 3: Rollback PowerPoint and the operating system on the Content Manger to compatible versions. The effective rollback combination is PowerPoint 2003 and Windows XP.

OPTION 4: Install AxisTV v.7.0.23 (available in Summer 2010) and a licensed copy of PowerPoint on each Channel Player to schedule and play the native file.

21.7.1.3.1.1 To install PowerPoint® on the Content Manager/Server:

1. To upload a stand-alone version of Microsoft PowerPoint® or to upload PowerPoint® from a bundled version of Microsoft Office®, you first need to connect a mouse, keyboard and a display to your Content Manager/Server.
2. Insert your PowerPoint® 2003 or Microsoft Office® installation disk into the Content Manager/Server disk drive.
3. If installing a stand-alone version of PowerPoint® 2003, simply install the software provided on the disk.
4. If you are using a Microsoft Office® installation disk (bundled software), you will need to perform a custom install. After selecting to perform a Custom Installation, select the following programs in their respective check boxes: Microsoft PowerPoint®, Office Shared Features, and Office Tools. You will need to select “Run all from my computer” – and be sure to deselect all other Microsoft Office® products. Note: Selecting the complete installation option during install will require you to uninstall PowerPoint and reinstall the application and select the custom installation option.
5. If PowerPoint® was not installed properly on the Content Manager/Server, then go to: Add/Remove Programs in the Control Panel and find Microsoft Office® in the list and select the Option to Change. Use the custom install instructions above.
Notes:

- AxisTV cannot import PowerPoint® slides with animations, embedded videos or links to embedded videos.

- To import a PowerPoint® file as a series of one or more messages, navigate to Import PowerPoint in the AxisTV browser interface.

- If you have an Adobe Flash® license, you also have the option of converting your PowerPoint® slides to Flash® animation, allowing basic slide and text block transitions to be a part of your finished Flash® playback. AxisTV is limited in the types of transitions it can convert to Flash®, so if PowerPoint® animations and transitions are an important part of your visual design, we suggest that you use a third party product designed specifically to convert PowerPoint® to Flash®, and then import your finished Flash® file into AxisTV.

21.7.1.4 Flash® Interactivity and Charting

AxisTV supports Adobe Flash® interactivity and charting for customers using v.7.0.12 and higher. AxisTV users will find interactivity useful in wayfinding or directional applications, and in charting real-time data as dynamic visualizations.

Note: AxisTV does not provide Flash® creation tools, but supports playback and database connectivity of user-created campaigns.

The new charting capabilities allow clients to insert a Flash® file into a playlist with other content pieces and connect to a database that can dynamically change animated elements during playback. Data visualization is typically used by organizations or departments who wish to monitor or improve performance metrics using dashboards, reporting, analytics, statistical, financial or other raw data analysis. It is used in many applications including business and productivity monitoring, executive information systems, content management systems, survey and poll analysis, and network monitoring.

Well-designed wayfinding tools and sign systems, such as touch screen panels displaying interactive building and campus maps, improve visitor satisfaction and reduce personnel costs associated with directional instructions. The integration of digital signs, event management applications, interactivity and room signs can not only efficiently direct people to their desired location, but can also provide important news and updates.

Requirements:

Adobe Flash® interactivity and charting is available for customers using v.7.0.12 and higher.

The Adobe Flash file must be a .swf file that points to an external database file, such as an .xml file. Adobe security settings must be enabled on the Channel Player. To set Adobe security settings:


In the Adobe Flash Player Settings Manager

- Select “Always Allow”

- Click the drop down menu “Edit Locations”

  - Select to Add or Edit Locations. You may choose to Delete a Location or Delete All Locations if necessary.
  - You may either Browse for files or Browse for an entire folder. Select Confirm to add files or folders to your trusted locations or cancel to cancel the action.
  - You will see your selected files and/or folders listed in the trusted files location window.
21.8 Build a Channel Player

The setup steps for AxisTV Channel Players follow.

21.8.1 Build and Clone OS

1. Confirm hardware configuration, correct amount of RAM, etc.
2. Configure BIOS settings
   a. Power Up after Power Fail – Last State
   b. Silent Boot – Disabled
   c. Boot Device Priority
      i. First - CD
      ii. Second - Hard Drive

21.8.2 Windows® XP Pro

1. Setup Windows® XP Pro with one NTFS partition – Create a new partition, delete any old ones
   ii. Name: Valued Visix Customer, Org: VISIX (Visix, Inc.)
   mm. Create unique computer name, administrator password is A4d35HeC
   nn. Accept “Typical” network settings
   oo. Leave as a member of WORKGROUP
   pp. “Final Setup Wizard”
      i. If network is connected
         1. Select LAN
         2. Always connected
         3. Obtain IP and DNS settings automatically
      ii. Do not enable auto updates
      iii. Do Not activate
      iv. Set “Your Name” account to be AxisTVUser, no others
2. Check for and install missing hardware drivers
3. Confirm Windows® XP Service Pack 2
4. Start | Control Panel | Security Center
   qq. Ignore Firewall
   rr. Ignore Auto Update
   ss. Virus Protection | Recommendations
      i. Check “I have…I’ll monitor myself.”
   tt. Change the way security center alerts me
      i. Deselect all
5. Start | Control Panel | User Accounts
   uu. Change the way users log on or off
      i. Uncheck Use the Welcome Screen
   vv. Change an account
      i. Select AxisTVUser
         1. Create a password – TechTech1!
         2. Do not make files and folders private
         3. Change my picture
            a. Select a suitable image (airplane, astronaut)
6. Display Properties
   ww. Theme Tab
      i. Windows® Classic
   xx. Screen Saver Tab
      i. Set Screen Saver to None
      ii. Set the operating system power settings
          1. Set System Standby, Hard Disks, and Monitor to NEVER
          2. Save scheme as AxisTV
   yy. Appearance Tab
      i. Set desktop color to black
   zz. Settings Tab
      i. 1024 x 768, 16 or 24 bpp
7. Taskbar and Start Menu Properties
   a. Clear “Keep Taskbar on top of other windows” checkbox
   b. Check “Auto hide” checkbox
   c. Clear “Hide inactive icons” checkbox
   d. Start Menu Tab
      ii. Use Classic Start Menu
      iii. Customize Button
         1. Check all items listed below, uncheck those not listed
            a. Display Administrative Tools
            b. Display Logoff
            c. Display Run
            d. Enable Drag and Drop
            e. Show Small Icons in Start Menu

8. My Computer | Properties
   a. Advanced tab | Performance section | Settings button
   iv. Visual Effects Tab
      1. Select Adjust for Best Performance
   v. Advanced Tab | Virtual Memory Section | Change Button
      1. Set Initial Size to 2 x physical RAM installed
      2. Set Maximum Size to 2 x physical RAM installed
   b. Remote tab
      vi. Clear the Remote Assistance check box
      vii. Check the Remote Desktop check box

9. Start | Settings | Control Panel | Windows Firewall
   a. Set firewall On
   b. Exceptions tab
      i. Select Remote Desktop ONLY
   c. Advanced tab | Local Area Connection | Settings button
      i. Add new services

10. Open Windows® Explorer
    a. Set the view in the right hand pane to View Details
    b. Tools | Folder Options | View Tab
       i. Check all items listed below, uncheck those not listed
          2. Automatically search for network folders and printers
          3. Display contents of system folders
          4. Display the full path in the address bar
          5. Display the full path in the title bar
          6. Show hidden files and folders
          7. Remember each folder’s view settings
    c. Apply to all folders

11. Desktop
    a. Delete all unnecessary shortcuts
    b. Delete My Documents shortcut
    c. Arrange icons (check then uncheck Auto Arrange)

12. My Network Places | Properties | Local Area Connection | Properties
    a. Select Internet Protocol | Properties
       i. Select Obtain IP address automatically
       ii. Select Obtain DNS server address automatically

13. My Computer | Manage | Event Viewer
    a. Set all event logs to 1024 KB in size
    b. Overwrite as needed

14. Set the server to auto-logon to the axistvuser account
    a. Start | Run | regedit.exe
    b. In HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Microsoft\Windows NT\CurrentVersion\Winlogon
    c. Create new string value: AutoAdminLogon, value = 1
    d. Create new string value: Default Password, value = TechTech1!
15. Set the Internet Explorer® homepage to http://localhost
16. Start | Settings | Control Panel | Automatic Updates
   a. Select Download updates for me, but let me choose when to install
17. Apply latest Windows® Updates
18. Create a ‘C:\Program files\Visix\Installers\AxisTV’ folder
19. Reboot machine

21.8.3 Install and Configure AxisTV
1. Copy the AxisTV Channel 7.0.x.x installation folder into ‘C:\Program files\Visix\Installers\AxisTV’ to allow to be run locally
2. Run AxisTV Setup (See following chapter)
3. Run Windows® Update and apply any critical or security updates
4. Reboot machine

21.8.4 Start Here if Building Server from a Clone
1. Clone new machine from AxisTV image file
2. Change the name of Server
3. (If ImpactVCB installed only) Install ImpactVCB support
   a. Install video and aux drivers for hardware
   b. Run c:\windows\primary.exe
      i. Select Force primary
4. Install MPEG-2 CODEC
5. Test player
   a. Run c:\Program Files\Visix\AxisTV\player.exe
   b. Windows® firewall should interrupt and ask if you want to unblock this application – respond Unblock
   c. Add to a Content Manager/Server
   d. Create new bulletins
   e. Verify new bulletins appear on player
   f. Use Task Manager to stop player.exe
6. Start | Run | gedit.msc
   a. Computer Configuration | Administrative Templates | System
      i. Remove Boot / Shutdown / Logon / Logoff / Status messages
         1. Enable
   b. User Configuration | Administrative Templates | System
      i. Custom User Interface
         1. Enable – c:\Program Files\Visix\AxisTV\player.exe
      ii. Ctrl+Alt+Del Options
         1. (Do not perform) Remove Task Manger
            a. Enable
         2. Remove Lock Computer
            a. Enable
         3. Remove Change Password
            a. Enable
         4. Remove Logoff
            a. Enable
   c. Reboot
7. Logon to player (admin, tech)
   a. Select shutdown
      i. Select that it play at next boot up
21.9 Install AxisTV Channel Player Software

21.9.1 AxisTV Channel Player
This installer can be used to setup the following kinds of devices:

- 2RU Channel Player
- Small Form Factor Channel Player
- Mini Form Factor Channel Player
- MeetingMinder™

1. Run Channel Player 7.0.x.x setup.exe
2. Acknowledge AxisTV license agreement
3. Acknowledge dialogs to begin installation
4. A ‘Complete’ install should be chosen. Most of the time upgrades should be handled with the Channel Player Utility on the Content Manager/Server. There will be occasions when it is better to run the InstallShield (such as when you need to add the .NET Framework).
5. Acknowledge Installation Finish
6. Reboot if prompted

If an upgrade is run with InstallShield, be sure to change the destination directory to match the previously installed player.

21.9.1.1 Additional Software
All Channel Players should be configured with the following optional software installed:

- Adobe Flash® Player (8.0 or higher)

21.9.1.2 Installer Prerequisites
Microsoft® .NET Framework 1.1 is required in order to execute the Channel Player and is bundled into the installer.

On some Windows® XP installations, the Windows® Installer service itself is automatically updated by the installer. If this happens the PC may require a reboot and will continue the installation after the reboot.

21.9.1.3 Shell Registration
The installer automatically registers player.exe as the user’s shell.

21.10 AxisTV Default Passwords
Use the following default local administrator account to log into Windows® on any type of AxisTV server:

**Username:** axistvuser
**Password:** TechTech1!

The default AxisTV administrator account is:
**Username:** administrator
**Password:** tech

The default Windows® administrator account is:
**Username:** Administrator
**Password:** A4d35Hec

The default Player Shell administrator account is:
**Username:** admin
**Password:** tech
21.11 Video Window Option

A video capture card installed into a Channel Player supports the AxisTV Video Window Option. Each Channel Player intended to support video windows must have the card installed. Conversely only those Channel Players, rather than every Channel Player in the system, must have the card installed. This card takes either composite or S-Video as an input. Stereo audio is also supported in this feature. Audio is fed into the Line In connection of the audio system on the Channel Player. The audio Line In connection is a stereo 1/8” (mini) phone connector and is typically blue in color.

S-Video connections are made to the lone Mini-DIN connector on the video capture card. When a composite signal is used it must be connected to the center of the three RCA connectors.

21.11.1 Tuner Card Option

The Tuner Card is also available as an alternative to the standard Video Window Card. This card has an internal tuner and will allow you to change channels within the AxisTV Web User Interface.

21.11.2 Channel Player Video Options

A Channel Player provides a VGA video output at the back of the player. The VGA connector is a standard female 15 pin HD. DVI output is optional with the AXIS-TV-GC1 addition. S-video and composite video outputs are available with the optional ADD2 scan converter card.

21.11.3 VGA Only

To connect the VGA output of the Channel Player to your video distribution system, simply plug in a user provided VGA cable into the main VGA port located on the back of the player.

21.11.4 Composite or S-Video Only

To use the S-Video or composite video outputs, the optional ADD2 Card and connectors must be used.

21.11.5 Extended Widescreen Option

The Extended Widescreen Option card is available on the 2RU and small form factor players. The card has 1 DVI output, a y-cable with 2 DVI outputs on and DVI to VGA adapters. The VGA connector is a standard female 15 pin HD. To connect the VGA output of the Channel Player to your video distribution system, simply connect the VGA adapter to the 1/3 end of the Y-cable and plug in a user provided VGA cable into the VGA adapter.

For setup purposes, a local monitor might be necessary. If so, use the y-cable with VGA adapter. The other HD-15 connector on the rear of the player is not enabled if the GC1 option is enabled. A permanent monitor connection is not required.
22 Visix Support Contacts

Regardless of their purchase level, Visix application users have access to support. If you’re having any difficulties with your Visix products, you can get the answers you need.

1. Visit the Visix User Forum, a free online resource where you can share questions and answers with other users. This peer-to-peer message board has blogs and forums categorized by task-oriented topics. Registered users can post questions, ideas and tips; share creative content, policies and news; and access Visix-provided user resources. Logon today at: www.visixforum.com.

2. Search our extensive knowledge base of frequently asked questions (FAQs) based on questions from others Visix customers. You’re guaranteed to find valuable guidance for the most common issues here: http://helpdesk.visix.com/support/

3. Contact our support team for assistance: Our technical support hours are 8:30AM to 7:00PM Eastern Time, Monday through Thursday, and 8:30AM to 5:00PM Eastern Time on Friday, except published holidays. You can open a support request online at www.visix.com, via email, or by leaving a voicemail using our toll free phone number.

If you would like technical support directly from Visix, you first need to register your system. Step-by-step instructions in the Technical Support section of www.visix.com will walk you through this simple process.

Visix offers help desk support at no charge for 90 days to all customers purchasing a new system. After 90 days, free support is only available to customers who have purchased a Software Maintenance Agreement (SMA) or Service Level Agreement (SLA). All other support requests are available by appointment only and charged on a per incident basis. Billable support hours are available for purchase online or by phone.

We offer two levels of support, depending on your support agreement and the level of escalation you’d like to request:

Priority Support
- Priority response over fee-based support issues during normal business hours, including remote support via WebEx™ where appropriate
- Priority support is available at no cost to current SLA and SMA subscribers and to registered users who have recently purchased a Visix application (within 90 days) or an upgrade (within 10 days)

Fee-based Support
- Billed at an hourly rate with a minimum charge of one-half of an hour
- Typically includes phone support and remote diagnostics via WebEx™
- Your content manager/server must have access to the Internet

AxisTV Configuration Design Services - Our configuration design services are available to any client that would like assistance with content creation, layouts and other feature configuration needs. We offer on-site services or remote service delivered via WebEx™.

Training - Our certified trainers teach your users how to get the most out of your Visix software. We offer customized on-site sessions or fee-based web training via WebEx™. To request additional information or to schedule training and configuration services, please contact us at training@visix.com.

This manual was last updated June 30, 2010.
Visix reserves the right to alter specifications at any time without notice.